

# AL-BAHIER

## CONNECT 6

Second Term

Parents' Guide



Primary

6

Name : .....  
Class : .....  
School: .....



# Contents

## Theme 3: I discover myself

<b>Unit (7)</b>	<b>Amazing artifacts</b>	<b>(7)</b>
<b>Unit (8)</b>	<b>Toys and games</b>	<b>(46)</b>
<b>Unit (9)</b>	<b>What's the story?</b>	<b>(79)</b>
	<b>Review (3)</b>	<b>(112)</b>

## Theme 4: Myself and others

<b>Unit (10)</b>	<b>Free as a bird</b>	<b>(115)</b>
<b>Unit (11)</b>	<b>How can I help?</b>	<b>(153)</b>
<b>Unit (12)</b>	<b>Fiction reader: Atemu and Amethyst</b>	<b>(192)</b>
	<b>Review (4)</b>	<b>(212)</b>

<b>TERM (2) PROJECT</b>	<b>(213)</b>
-------------------------	--------------

<b>Listening Texts</b>	<b>(214)</b>
------------------------	--------------



# Reading and Writing Skills

## Reading Skills

### مهارات القراءة

#### How to deal with the "Reading Comprehension" question.

#### كيف تتعامل مع سؤال قطعة الفهم

قطعة الفهم هي عبارة عن فقرة يقوم الطالب بقراءتها ثم يجيب عن بعض الأسئلة:

أ- ثلاثة أسئلة اختيار من متعدد تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

(تحديد الفكرة العامة في النص - تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص - توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص)

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تحديد الفكرة العامة للنص

- This text is about ".....".

Or: The (main idea / general idea) of the text is about ".....".

Or: The text talks about ".....".

- تحديد معاني كلمات أو عبارات في النص

- The underlined word "....." has the same meaning as ".....".

Or: The underlined word "....." is the opposite of the word ".....".

Or: The underlined word "....." refers to ".....".

Or: The underlined word "....." means ".....".

- توضيح الفهم لتفاصيل معينة في النص

ب- سؤالان من الأسئلة التي تبدأ بكلمة استفهام تقيس مدى فهم الطالب لمهارات القراءة التالية:

ويأتي السؤال بإحدى هذه الصيغ:

- تقديم استنتاجات منطقية من النص:

- Infer

استنتج

- Mention

اذكر

- تلخيص التفاصيل والأفكار الداعمة في النص:

- Summarize the main idea of the text.



## مهارات الكتابة

## كيف تكتب فقرة إنشائية

- ## كيف تكتب رسالة بريد إلكتروني

#### 4 Reading and Writing Skills



## كيف تكتب مدونة:

- 1 اكتب تاريخ اليوم عند بداية كتابة المدونة.
- 2 قم بكتابة عنوان مناسب لموضوع المدونة.
- 3 صف الأماكن والأحداث التي مرت عليك .
- 4 صف ما شعرت به خلال اليوم.
- 5 اكتب بعض الضمائر الشخصية مثل (I / Me).
- 6 استخدم بعض الصور لتوضيح الفكرة.
- 7 اكتب رأيك في الموضوع الذي تتحدث عنه باستخدام (In my opinion) / (I think that).

#### ④ How to write a diary entry:

## كيف تكتب مذكرة - يوميات:

- |                                      |                                   |
|--------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1) Write the date.                   | اكتب التاريخ.                     |
| 2) Start with "Dear Diary".          | ابدأ بـ (Dear Diary).             |
| 3) Write about how you felt.         | اكتب كيف كان شعورك.               |
| 4) Use informal language.            | استخدام لغة غير رسمية.            |
| 5) Use personal pronouns as "I - me" | استخدام ضمائر شخصية مثل (I - me). |
| 6) Describe the (places - events).   | صف (الأماكن والأحداث).            |

### 5 How to write a text message:

## كيف تكتب رسالة نصية

Drear .....

عزيزي .....

I want to .....

## موضوع الرسالة

What do you think?

ماذا تعتقد؟

I hope you like my ideas!

أتمنى أن تعجبك أفكاري!

(Your name)

(اسمك)



# Punctuation Marks

## علامات الترقيم

### Capital letters

A B  
C

الحروف الكبيرة

توضع في بداية الجملة / أيام الأسبوع / الشهور / اللغات / الجنسيات / أسماء الأشخاص / البلدان / الأماكن الشهيرة.

1 Ali is from Egypt.

2 I visited the Egyptian Museum in April.

3 Today is Saturday.

4 I am Egyptian and I speak Arabic.

### Period (Full Stop)



النقطة

توضع في نهاية الجملة.

1 She goes to the club every day.

2 I don't like fish.

### Question Mark



علامة الاستفهام

توضع في نهاية السؤال.

1 Where were you born?

2 Do you like English?

### Exclamation Mark



علامة التعجب

توضع في نهاية العبارات أو الجمل التي تعبر عن الترحيب أو التعجب .

- Hi!

- Wow!

### Apostrophe



الفصلة العليا

1 Shahd's dress is red.

توضع قبل (s) الملكية.

2 I'm a student.

توضع في الاختصارات.

### Comma



الفصلة السفلى

1 I like reading, swimming, and tennis.

توضع عند كتابة قائمة بالأشياء أو العبارات.

2 Yes, of course.

توضع بعد (Yes / No) .

3 I like reading, but I don't like art.

توضع قبل (but) .

4 Can I have some milk, please?

توضع قبل (please) إذا جاءت في نهاية الجملة.





# Unit 7

## Amazing artifacts

### In this unit, the students will ...

- listen and read about artifacts in the Museum of Ancient History.
- listen, read, research, and write about important ancient artifacts.
- listen to a presentation about Ancient Egyptian metals.
- use the past simple.
- do a quiz about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.
- read about animals in Ancient Egypt.
- use prepositions of place.
- say words with the sound /er/.
- write a fact file about a metal or material in Ancient Egypt.
- research and write display boards for artifacts from Ancient Egypt.



# Lesson (1)

## A VISIT TO THE MUSEUM

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.

### Materials

مواد خام



granite

جرانيت



glass

زجاج



clay

صلصال / فخار



gold

ذهب

### Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

artifacts

قطع أثرية (مصنوعات يدوية)

durable

متين

preserve

يحفظ

fascinating

مذهل / خلاب

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Ancient Egyptians

المصريون القدماء

a visit

زيارة

museum

متحف

materials

مواد خام

guide

يرشد / مرشد

papyrus

ورق البردي

parents

الوالدان

pot

إناء

climate

مناخ

dry

جاف

valuable

ذو قيمة / قيم

cold

بارد

today

اليوم

students

طلاب

reason

سبب

wet

رطب

hard

صلب

weather

طقس

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Present

#### Past

#### P.P

use

يستخدم

used

used

last

يدوم / يستمر

lasted

lasted

cover

يغطي

covered

covered

enjoy

يستمتع

enjoyed

enjoyed

damage

يضر / يتلف

damaged

damaged



## Lesson (1)

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
know	يعرف	knew	known
build	يبني	built	built
learn	يتعلم	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
make	يصنع	made	made
find	يجد	found	found
keep	يحفظ	kept	kept

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

welcome to	مرحبا بكم في	made of	مصنوع من (مادة لا تتغير)
excited to	متحمس لـ	made from	مصنوع من (مادة تتغير)
damaged by	تضرر بـ	a lot of	الكثير من
close to	قريب من	first of all	أولاً
cover in	يغطي بـ	last forever	يدوم للأبد
happy about	سعيد بشأن	an interesting question	سؤال مثير للاهتمام
work at	يعمل في	Tutankhamun's tomb	مقبرة توت عنخ آمون
good for	جيد لـ / مفيد لـ	in good conditions	في ظروف جيدة
The Museum of Ancient History			متحف التاريخ القديم
Egyptian Eagle Primary School			مدرسة النسور المصري الابتدائية

### Study the following:



- 1 The picture is made of papyrus. الصورة مصنوعة من ورق البردي.
- 2 The pots are made of glass. الأواني مصنوعة من الزجاج.
- 3 The statue is made of gold. التمثال مصنوع من الذهب.
- 4 The temple is made of granite. المعبد مصنوع من الجرانيت.
- 5 The jar is made of clay. البرطمان مصنوع من الفخار.

### Did you know?

An artifact is an object that was made by humans in the past.  
The Khufu solar ship is an artifact from Ancient Egypt. It is the world's oldest intact ship.

القطعة الأثرية هي شيء صنعه البشر في الماضي. مركب الشمس الخاص بالملك خوفو هو قطعة أثرية من مصر القديمة. إنها أقدم سفينة سليمة في العالم.





## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

**Mr Tarek** : Good morning and welcome to the Museum of Ancient History. My name is Mr Tarek and I am your guide today.  
صباح الخير ومرحبًا بكم في متحف التاريخ القديم. اسمي السيد طارق وأنا مرشدكم اليوم.

**Tamer** : Good morning, Mr Tarek. I'm Tamer and this is my sister Tamara. We're students at Egyptian Eagle Primary School, and these are our parents.

**Tamara** : صباح الخير استاذ طارق. أنا تامر وهذه أختي تامارا. نحن طلاب في مدرسة النسور المصري الابتدائية، وهذان هما والدينا.  
We're excited to learn more about Ancient Egyptian artifacts.  
نحن متحمسون لمعرفة المزيد عن القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة.

**Mr Tarek** : Great! What would you like to know? عظيم! ماذا تريدون أن تعرفي؟

**Tamara** : Well, first of all, why do we have so many **artifacts**?  
حسنًا، أولاً وقبل كل شيء، لماذا لدينا الكثير من القطع الأثرية؟

**Mr Tarek** : That's an interesting question. One reason is the climate. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to **preserve** them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with **granite**, a very hard and **durable** stone.

هذا سؤال مثير للاهتمام. أحد الأسباب هو المناخ. لدينا مناخ حار وجاف هنا في مصر، لذلك لا تتضرر القطع الأثرية بسبب الطقس البارد والرطب. وهذا يساعد على الحفاظ عليها. عرف المصريون القدماء أيضًا أن بعض المواد الخام

**Tamer** : يمكن أن تدوم لفترة طويلة. ولهذا السبب بنوا الأهرامات بالجرانيت، وهو حجر شديد الصلابة والمتانة.  
That's **fascinating**! What other materials did they use?

**Mr Tarek** : هذا رائع! ما هي المواد الخام الأخرى التي استخدموها؟  
They used a lot of **glass**, which lasts forever. They also used clay, which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots.

لقد استخدموا الكثير من الزجاج الذي يدوم إلى الأبد. كما استخدموا الطين الموجود بالقرب من نهر النيل لصنع الأواني.  
**Tamer** : I also heard they used a lot of **gold** in Tutankhamun's tomb.  
وسمعت أيضًا أنهم استخدموا الكثير من الذهب في مقبرة توت عنخ آمون.

**Mr Tarek** : Yes, the Ancient Egyptians liked to use gold because it is valuable, but it is also very durable. When they covered artifacts in gold, they kept them in good condition.

نعم، كان المصريون القدماء يحبون استخدام الذهب لأنه ذو قيمة، ولكنه أيضًا متين للغاية. وعندما غطوا القطع الأثرية بالذهب، احتفظوا بها في حالة جيدة.

**Tamer** : أنا سعيد بذلك! من المثير الاستمتاع بالأشياء التي صنعوها.  
I'm happy about that! It's exciting to enjoy the things they made.



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We have a hot, ..... climate here in Egypt.  
a) wet                      b) dry                      c) cold                      d) cool
2. Artifacts aren't ..... by cold and wet weather.  
a) kept                      b) stayed                      c) damaged                      d) built
3. Certain materials could ..... a long time.  
a) cast                      b) past                      c) fast                      d) last
4. The Pyramids were built with .....  
a) granite                      b) gold                      c) clay                      d) glass

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with .....  
a) paper                      b) clay                      c) bronze                      d) granite
2. Ancient Egyptians used gold for .....  
a) artifacts                      b) arts                      c) facts                      d) papyrus
3. Gold is valuable and .....  
a) cheap                      b) durable                      c) wet                      d) cold
4. A hot and dry climate helps to ..... artifacts.  
a) preserve                      b) damage                      c) sell                      d) buy
5. The Ancient Egyptians used a lot of ..... in Tutankhamun's tomb.  
a) papyrus                      b) clay                      c) glass                      d) gold

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

cheap - clay - valuable - artifacts

The Ancient Egyptians used a lot of glass, which lasts forever. They also used, 1) ..... which is found close to the River Nile, to make pots. They also liked to use gold because it is 2) ..... , but it is also very durable. When they covered 3) ..... in gold, they kept them in good condition.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egyptian artifacts are objects created by the ancient Egyptians. They made many fascinating artifacts that lasted thousands of years. These artifacts include pottery, jewelry, tombs and temples. Artifacts are very important for the information they provide about the history of Egypt. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians built the Pyramids with granite. They used glass, which lasts forever. They used clay to make pots, too.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Artifacts are important for the ..... they provide.  
a) temples      b) information      c) climate      d) pots
- The underlined word "ancient" means very .....  
a) old      b) modern      c) new      d) long

B) Answer the following questions.

- What's the main idea of the text? .....
- What materials did the Ancient Egyptians use for artifacts? .....
- What did the ancient Egyptians make? .....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

- to learn - are - We - excited - about - Ancient - Egypt - .  
.....
- climate The Egyptian - good - is - preserving - for - artifacts - .  
.....
- you - like - What - would - know - to - ?  
.....

#### 6 Punctuate the following.

- gold is valuable and durable .....
- why do we have so many artifacts .....

#### 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A visit to the museum

Guiding elements:

- Where is the museum?

- What artifacts did you see?



# Lesson (2)

# THEY LOVED ANIMALS

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



**baboon**

قرد البابون



**monkey**

قرد



**rat**

فأر



**crocodile**

تمساح



**hippo**

فرس النهر



**falcon**

صقر



**ibis**

طائر أبو منجل



**snake**

ثعبان

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

birds	طيور	flour	دقيق	cloth	قماش
pets	حيوانات الأليفة	bread	خبز	afterlife	الحياة الآخرة
popular	شعبي / محبوب	knowledge	معرفة	dangerous	خطير
favorite	مُفضل	seeds	بذور	almost	تقريباً
stone	حجر	particularly	وبشكل خاص	common	شائع
person	شخص	object	شيء	alone	بمفرده
oil	زيت	turtle	سلحفاة	reason	سبب

## Definitions

تعريفات

<b>grain</b>	seeds from plants used to make flour and bread	حبوب
<b>mummify</b>	to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time	يحنط
<b>wisdom</b>	using your knowledge to make good decisions	حكمة
<b>statue</b>	an object made of stone or another material to look like a person or animal	تمثال
<b>adored</b>	loved something very much	أحب بشدة / عشيّق

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
clean	ينظف	cleaned	cleaned
produce	ينتج	produced	produced
include	يتضمن	included	included
represent	يمثل	represented	represented
believe	يؤمن / يعتقد	believed	believed

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
grow	يزرع / ينمو	grew	grown
go	يذهب	went	gone
fall	يقع / يسقط	fell	fallen
teach	يُعَلِّم	taught	taught
become	يصبح	became	become
hurt	يؤذي / يؤلم	hurt	hurt

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

fall over	يقع على / يسقط على	as well	أيضًا
cover in	يغطي بـ	as well as	بالإضافة إلى
look after	يعتني بـ	everyday life	الحياة اليومية
free of pests	خالي من الحشرات أو الهوام	a very long time	فترة طويلة جدًا
look like	يشبه	make decisions	يتخذ قرارات
keep it safe	يبقيه آمنًا	on a boat ride	في جولة بالقارب
keep birds	يربي طيور	grow up	يكبر - ينمو
the whole time	طوال الوقت	go hiking	يتنزه سيرًا على الأقدام
had a picnic	قام بنزهه	important to	هام لـ



## Listen and read.

## What was the Ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?

ما هو الحيوان المفضل لدى المصريين القدماء؟

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly **adored** cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of **grain**. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

أحب المصريون القدماء الحيوانات وقاموا بتربية الكثير منها كحيوانات أليفة. كانوا يعيشون بشكل خاص القطط ، وكان هناك قطة في كل منزل تقريبًا. اعتقد المصريون القدماء أن القطط تعتني بهم وتبقيهم آمنين. لقد كانت أيضًا حيوانات أليفة جيدة لأنهم قاموا بتنظيف أنفسهم وجعلوا المنازل خالية من الآفات والهُوام مثل الفئران والثعابين. كان هذا مهمًا بشكل خاص للمزارعين ، الذين كانوا ينتجون الكثير من الحبوب. لم تأكل الفئران الحبوب لأن القطط أكلت الفئران!

## What other animals did the Ancient Egyptians keep?

ما هي الحيوانات الأخرى التي قام بتربيتها المصريون القدماء؟

As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

بالإضافة إلى القطط ، ربي الكثير من الناس القردة والبابون. حتى أن بعض الناس قاموا بتربية التماسيح وأفراس النهر والأسود ، والتي كانت خطيرة ويصعب الاعتناء بها. فلم تكن حيوانات أليفة محبوبة!

## Did the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pets as well?

هل قام المصريون القدماء بتربية الطيور كحيوانات أليفة أيضًا؟

Yes, they did. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented **wisdom**. There are thousands of **mummified** ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life—they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and **statues** of animals in the tombs.

نعم. أحب المصريون القدماء الطيور أيضًا ، وخاصة الصقور و طائر أبو منجل ، والذين كانوا يرمزون إلى الحكمة. هناك الآلاف من طيور أبو منجل المحنطة في سقارة وحدها. كل هذه الحيوانات الأليفة لم تكن مهمة فقط للحياة اليومية للمصريين القدماء - بل كانت مهمة أيضًا في الحياة الآخرة. لذلك من الشائع العثور على حيوانات أليفة محنطة وتمثال للحيوانات في المقابر.

## What animals are popular pets in Egypt today?

ما هي الحيوانات الأليفة المشهورة في مصر اليوم؟

Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include turtles, fish, and birds, which are of course much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles.

اليوم، لا تزال القطط حيوانات أليفة شائعة في مصر. تشمل الحيوانات الأخرى التي يربّيها الناس اليوم السلاحف والأسماك والطيور، والتي هي بالطبع أصغر بكثير وأسهل في الاعتناء بها من قردة البابون والتماسيح.



# L Language

## The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

**Form** التكوين

- **The second form of the verb.**

التصريف الثاني للفعل.

**Usage** الاستخدام

- **We use The Past Simple Tense to express finished actions in the past.**

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث انتهت في الماضي.

**1 Regular verbs** أفعال منتظمة

visit → visit**ed**

lov**e** → love**d**

tr**y** → tri**ed**

pl**ay** → play**ed**

dr**op** → dro**pped**

**1** نضيف (d, ed, ied) إلى الفعل المنتظم.

need → need**ed**

**2** إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يُضاف (d) فقط.

lik**e** → lik**ed**

**3** إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ثم نضيف (ied).

stud**y** → stud**ied**

**4** إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف متحرك يتم إضافة (ed) للفعل.

stay → stay**ed**

**5** إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرف متحرك واحد تُضاعف الحرف الأخير.

stop → stop**ped**

**2 Irregular verbs** أفعال غير منتظمة

become → be**came**

keep → kep**t**

**Keywords** الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last (year / .....)	(العام / .....) الماضي
ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي
Once	ذات مرة	in 2015	في عام (2015) أي تاريخ ماضي

e.g. I **visited** my grandmother **yesterday**.

Ali **played** with his cousin **last Saturday**.

**Negative** النفي

**Subject** (الفاعل) + **didn't** + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. Rats **didn't eat** the grain.

- I **didn't grow up** in Cairo.



## Lesson (2)

### Question السؤال

#### (Yes / No) question:

السؤال بـ "هل":

**Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

- e.g. Did the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pets?  
- Yes, they did. - No, they didn't.

#### Wh-question:

السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":

**Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

- e.g. What did they feed their cats?  
Where did he grow up?

### Verb to be in the past

#### Form التكوين

**(I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد) + was .....**

- e.g. I was at school yesterday.

**(They / You / We / اسم جمع) + were .....**

- e.g. They were at school yesterday.

#### Negative النفي

**Subject + (wasn't / weren't) + باقي الجملة**

- e.g. I wasn't a student at the local school.  
They weren't popular pets.

### Question السؤال

#### (Yes / No) question:

السؤال بـ "هل":

**(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

- e.g. Were there a lot of mummies?  
- Yes, there were. - No, there weren't.

#### Wh-question:

السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":

**Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

- e.g. Which was their favorite animal?





## Practice

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Did you ..... a nice weekend?  
a) have                      b) has                      c) having                      d) had
2. I ..... to Al-Azhar Park with my family last week.  
a) go                      b) went                      c) goes                      d) will go
3. We went on a boat ride. It ..... great!  
a) is                      b) were                      c) was                      d) are
4. There ..... popular pets.  
a) hasn't                      b) don't                      c) weren't                      d) wasn't
5. Rats didn't ..... the grain.  
a) eat                      b) eats                      c) ate                      d) eating
6. Which ..... their favorite animal?  
a) are                      b) was                      c) were                      d) have
7. .... the Ancient Egyptians only keep cats as pets?  
a) Do                      b) Does                      c) Did                      d) Doing
8. What did they ..... their cats?  
a) feed                      b) feeds                      c) fed                      d) feeding
9. The Ancient Egyptians ..... their pets.  
a) love                      b) loves                      c) loved                      d) loving
10. The Ancient Egyptians ..... their monkeys different tricks.  
a) teach                      b) teaches                      c) teaching                      d) taught

### 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The crocodiles quickly ..... (becoming) dangerous pets in the past.
2. The ibis ..... (represent) wisdom in Ancient Egypt.
3. .... (Does) you go hiking yesterday?
4. I ..... (grown) up in Alexandria but now I live in Cairo.
5. Last week, I ..... (fall) over and hurt my arm.
6. My trip ..... (be) good last Friday.
7. Yesterday, I fell over and ..... (hurts) my leg.
8. What did the Ancient Egyptians ..... (believed) about cats?
9. .... (Do) the Ancient Egyptians keep birds as pets?
10. What ..... (be) the Ancient Egyptians' favorite animal?



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Today, ..... are still popular pets in Egypt.  
a) cats                      b) camels                      c) dogs                      d) horses
- Other animals that people keep today include, turtles, ..... and birds.  
a) crocodiles                      b) fish                      c) monkeys                      d) cows
- Turtles and birds are ..... than baboons and crocodiles.  
a) bigger                      b) taller                      c) smaller                      d) shorter
- I ..... cats.  
a) hate                      b) dislike                      c) have                      d) adore

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Did the Ancient Egyptians ..... birds?  
a) dig                      b) keep                      c) take                      d) stay
- What animals are ..... pets in Egypt today?  
a) popular                      b) sports                      c) happy                      d) sad
- Rats and snakes are .....  
a) sports                      b) past                      c) pests                      d) insects
- "....." means seeds from plants used to make flour and bread.  
a) Wisdom                      b) Statue                      c) Grain                      d) Pet
- "....." is to love something very much.  
a) Mummify                      b) Fall                      c) Keep                      d) Adore
- "....." means using your knowledge to make good decisions.  
a) Wisdom                      b) Grain                      c) Statue                      d) Falcon
- "....." is to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time.  
a) Fall                      b) Mummify                      c) Produce                      d) Keep
- This ..... is made of stone.  
a) statue                      b) grain                      c) wisdom                      d) glass
- The Ancient Egyptians ..... cats, and there was a cat in almost every house.  
a) killed                      b) adored                      c) hated                      d) represented
- Farmers produce a lot of .....  
a) green                      b) grown                      c) grain                      d) pets



3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

hippos - mummified - falcons - wisdom

The Ancient Egyptians loved birds, especially 1)..... and the ibis, which represented 2)..... There are thousands of 3)..... ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets weren't only important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life – they were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and statues of animals in the tombs.

4

Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

As well as cats, many people kept monkeys and baboons. Some people even kept crocodiles, hippos, and lions, which were dangerous and difficult to look after. They weren't popular pets!

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept them as .....  
a) bats                      b) pets                      c) cats                      d) rats
- The cats kept the houses free of .....  
a) subjects                      b) sports                      c) pests                      d) grain

B) Answer the following questions.

- Why didn't the rats eat grain? .....
- What did the Ancient Egyptians believe about cats? .....
- Summarize the first paragraph in one sentence. ....



## Lesson (2)

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Al-Azhar - went - I - to - Park - with - family - my - .  
.....
2. didn't - My - up - sister - grow - Cairo - in - .  
.....
3. bed - stayed - I - in - whole - the - day - .  
.....

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I ..... (become) a teacher last year.
2. .... (Do) the Ancient Egyptians keep cats as pets?
3. Where did they ..... (went) yesterday?
4. They ..... (see) a lot of things at the museum last week.
5. When ..... (does) they go to Alexandria? - Last summer.
6. Ancient Egyptians ..... (believe) that cats kept them safe.
7. I didn't ..... (liked) walking.
8. Hany ..... (buy) a new car last Friday.
9. I ..... (not be) at school last Sunday.
10. Did you ..... (had) a nice weekend?

### 7 Punctuate the following.

1. did you grow up in Cairo
2. i went to Al-Azhar Park two days ago

### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Your favorite animal**

Guiding elements:

- What's it?
- Why do you keep it?

.....

.....

.....



# Lesson (3) Part (A)

## METAL IN ANCIENT EGYPT

### Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

trade	تجارة / يتاجر	stone	حجر	weapon	سلاح
metal	معدن	economy	اقتصاد		

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

country	دولة / بلد	system	نظام	jewelry	مجوهرات
rocks	صخور	chin	ذقن	goods	بضائع
melt	يذوب	whiteboard	سبورة بيضاء	beard	لحية
tool	أداة / عدة يدوية	clock	ساعة حائط	head	رأس
silver	فضة	art	عمل فني	rare	نادر

### Definitions

تعريفات

economy	the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used	اقتصاد
metal	something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong	معدن
trade	buying and selling things between countries	تجارة
weapon	an object used for fighting or hunting animals	سلاح

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
form	formed	formed
hunt	hunted	hunted

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
sell	sold	sold
buy	bought	bought
fight	fought	fought

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

trade with	يتاجر مع	Tutankhamun's Mask	قناع توت عنخ آمون
form it into	يشكلها إلى	with blue lines	ذات خطوط زرقاء



## Listen to Injy's and Dalia's class presentation.

**Injy :** Our class presentation is about trade in Ancient Egypt. I'm Injy, and this is Dalia. The Ancient Egyptians bought from and sold many things to different countries. This is called trading, Dalia, can you tell us what kinds of things the Ancient Egyptians traded?



عروضنا التقديمي يدور حول التجارة في مصر القديمة. أنا إنجي وهذه داليا. اشترى المصريون القدماء من بلدان مختلفة وباعوا أشياء كثيرة. وهذا ما يسمى التجارة، داليا، هل يمكنك أن تخبرنا ما هي أنواع الأشياء التي تاجر بها المصريون القدماء؟

**Dalia :** Thanks, Injy. Well, one of the most interesting things they traded with other countries was metal! The Ancient Egyptians first found metal in rocks around 7,000 years ago. They heated the rocks and took out the metal parts. They learned that metal was harder than stone, and that they could melt and make different shapes with it.

شكرا، إنجي، حسنا، كان المعدن هو أحد أكثر الأشياء التي تاجروا بها مع الدول الأخرى إثارة للاهتمام. وجد المصريون القدماء المعدن لأول مرة في الصخور منذ حوالي 7000 عام. قاموا بتسخين الصخور وإخراج الأجزاء المعدنية. علموا أن المعدن كان أقوى من الحجر، وأنهم كانوا يستطيعون إذابته وصنع أشكال مختلفة منه.

**Injy :** That's fascinating, Dalia, thank you. What did they use the metal for?

هذا رائع، يا داليا، شكرا لك. فيم استخدموا المعدن؟

**Dalia :** They used it to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow things like food more easily. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and decorations. Silver was also used, but it was rarer. As art and culture were very important to the Ancient Egyptians, many of their craftsmen used different types of metal to make statues and sculptures to sell.

استخدموه لصنع الأدوات والأسلحة، حتى يتمكنوا من الصيد على الأرض، وزراعة أشياء مثل الطعام بسهولة أكبر. كان الذهب معدنا شائعا لصنع المجوهرات والزينة. تم استخدام الفضة أيضا، لكنها كانت نادرة. نظرا لأن الفن والثقافة كانا مهمين جدا للمصريين القدماء، فقد استخدم العديد من الحرفيين أنواعا مختلفة من المعدن لصنع التماثيل والمنحوتات لبيعها.



**Injy** : That's right. But they didn't just sell metal to other countries. They also bought some metals like silver, which they got through trade with countries. And as they traded more, this helped the Ancient Egyptians develop their economy, until Ancient Egypt was one of the strongest economies in the world.

هذا صحيح، لكنهم لم يبيعوا المعدن فقط إلى دول أخرى، بل اشتروا بعض المعادن، مثل الفضة، والتي حصلوا عليها من خلال التجارة مع البلدان. ومع ازدياد التجارة، ساعد هذا المصريين القدماء على تطوير اقتصادهم، حتى كانت مصر القديمة واحدة من أقوى الاقتصادات في العالم.

**Dalia** : Yes, you only need to look at the Ancient Egyptian artifacts in museums today to see that this is true.

نعم، ما عليك سوى إلقاء نظرة على القطع الأثرية المصرية القديمة في المتاحف اليوم لترى أن هذا صحيح.

**Injy** : Well, that's the end of our presentation. Does anyone have any questions, please? حسنًا و هذا هو نهاية العرض التقديمي. هل لدى أي شخص أي أسئلة من فضلكم ؟

## 1 Read the presentation again and complete the summary.

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found 1)..... in rocks. Metal was harder than 2)....., and they could melt and form it into different 3)..... They used metal to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt 4)..... the land, and grow food. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but was rarer. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to 5).....

## 2 Read and match.

- |            |   |
|------------|---|
| 1. trade   | a. the system of how a country's money and goods are produced and used. |
| 2. metal   | b. something, like gold or iron, that is hard and strong.               |
| 3. weapon  | c. buying and selling things between countries.                         |
| 4. economy | d. an object used for fighting or hunting animals.                      |



## Prepositions of place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

☀ We use prepositions of place to say where things are:

نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنخبر عن مكان الأشياء:

e.g. The Ancient Egyptians first found metal **in** the rocks.

They could hunt and grow things **on** the land.

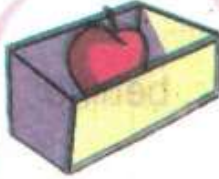
☀ Here are some common prepositions of place:

إليك بعض حروف جر المكان الشائعة:



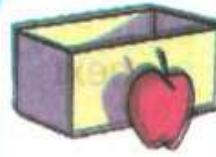
on

على



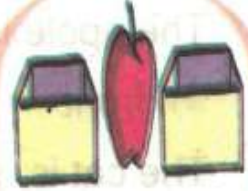
in

في



in front of

أمام



between

بين



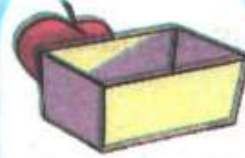
under

تحت



next to

بجوار



behind

خلف

☀ To ask about places:

للسؤال عن الأماكن:

Where .....?

(أين .....؟)

e.g. Where is the cat?

- It's **on** the box.



e.g. Where is the cat?

- It's **between** the boxes.



Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found **in** his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines **between** gold lines. **Under** his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake **on** the top of his head.



إن من أجمل القطع الأثرية من مصر القديمة هو قناع توت عنخ آمون الذي عُثر عليه في مقبرته. القناع ذهبي، وبه وجود خطوط زرقاء بين الخطوط الذهبية. وتحت ذقنه لحية رقيقة. يوجد أيضًا ثعبان في أعلى رأسه.





## Practice

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians first found metal ..... the rocks.  
a) behind      b) in front of      c) in      d) at
2. The apple is ..... to the box.  
a) front      b) next      c) behind      d) on
3. The cat is ..... of the chair.  
a) behind      b) on      c) in front      d) next
4. He has a thin beard ..... his chin.  
a) between      b) front      c) under      d) next to
5. There is a snake ..... the top of Tutankhamun's head.  
a) in      b) on      c) to      d) behind
6. I can see an apple ..... the table and the box.  
a) in      b) in front      c) next      d) between
7. There is a boy ..... the door, so I can't see him.  
a) next to      b) behind      c) in front of      d) in

### 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I like walking ..... (on) the fresh air.
2. There is an apple ..... (front) to the box.
3. I can see a book ..... (next to) the table and the desk.
4. The apple is ..... (behind) of the box.
5. There's a cap ..... (in) the top of his head.
6. Ali is sitting next ..... (of) his friend.
7. There is a pen ..... (front) the books.
8. My brother always puts his shoes ..... (in) the chairs.



# Lesson (3) Part (B)

## METAL IN ANCIENT EGYPT

### Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

golden touch	لمسة ذهبية	trip over	يخطأ بقدمه على / يدوس على
tears	دموع	hug	يحتضن

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

king	ملك	human	إنسان	castle	قلعة
unkind	قاسي	rich	غني	sick	مريض
goat	عنزة	rose garden	حديقة زهور	precious	ثمين

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
touch	يلمس	touched
celebrate	يحتفل	celebrated
save	ينقذ	saved
change	يغير	changed

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
feel	يشعر	felt
leave	يغادر	left
lose	يفقد	lost
give	يعطي	given
take	يأخذ	taken

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

get a reward	يحصل على مكافأة	change ... back into	يغير ... إلى ما كان عليه
turn to / in	يتحول إلى	ask for a special meal	يطلب وجبة مميزة
care about	يعتني بـ	strange - looking goat	عنزة غريبة الشكل
come true	يتحقق	It looked very sick.	بدت مريضة جدًا.



## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

## KING MIDAS AND THE GOLDEN TOUCH

## The Beginning

الملك ميداس واللمسة الذهبية

Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his daughter, Marigold, his rose garden, and gold. His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his castle.



منذ عدة سنوات ، عاش هناك ملك يسمى الملك ميداس. لقد أحب ثلاثة أشياء أكثر من أي شيء آخر: ابنته ، ماري جولد ، وحديقة الزهور ، والذهب. وكان الشيء المفضل لديه هو قضاء بعض الوقت في حديقته مع ماري جولد. لكنه أحب أيضًا أن ينظر إلى كل الذهب في قلعته.

One night, he was walking in his garden when he **tripped over** something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better.

في إحدى الليالي ، كان يمشي في حديقته عندما داس على شيء ما على الأرض. كانت عنزة غريبة المظهر. بدت مريضة جدًا. كان الملك ميداس رجلًا لطيفًا ، لذا أخذ العنزة في قلعته. هناك ، أعطاها الطعام وسرير دافئ. في الصباح ، شعرت العنزة بتحسن كبير.

## The Middle

"I would like to thank you, King Midas," said the goat. "What would you like more than anything else in the world?"

King Midas thought for a minute, then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold."

"OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

قالت العنزة: "أود أن أشكرك أيها الملك ميداس". "ما الذي تحبه أكثر من أي شيء آخر في العالم؟" فكر الملك ميداس لمدة دقيقة ، ثم قال: "أود أن يتحول كل شيء ألمسه إلى الذهب". قالت العنزة "حسنًا"، وحققت أمنية الملك.

King Midas was very excited. After the goat left, he walked around the castle. When he touched a chair, it turned to gold. When he touched his bed, it turned to gold, too. To celebrate, he asked for a special meal. But when he touched



the food, he couldn't eat it because it turned to gold. Then, he went outside into the garden to find Marigold. When he **hugged** her, she also turned to gold!

كان الملك ميداس متحمساً جداً. بعد مغادرة العنزة، تجول حول القلعة وعندما لمس كرسيًا، تحول إلى ذهب. وعندما لمس سريره، تحول إلى ذهب، أيضاً. ولكي يحتفل بذلك، طلب وجبة خاصة. ولكن عندما لمس الطعام، لم يستطع تناوله لأنه تحول إلى ذهب. ثم ذهب للخارج إلى الحديقة ليجد ابنته ماري جولد وعندما عانقها، تحولت أيضاً إلى ذهب!

### The End

King Midas started crying. "Please come back, goat!" he said. "I can't lose Marigold."

His **tears** fell on his precious roses and they turned to gold. But he didn't care about roses or gold any more – he just wanted to save his daughter.

بدأ الملك ميداس في البكاء. وقال للعنزة "من فضلك عودي". "أنا لا أستطيع أن أفقد ماري جولد." سقطت دموعه على أزهاره الثمينة فتحولت إلى ذهب. لكنه لم يعد يهتم بالورود أو الذهب - لقد أراد فقط إنقاذ ابنته.

The goat heard King Midas and returned to change everything back to how it was before.

"Thank you so much!" said King Midas. "I will never think gold is so important again!"

سمعت العنزة الملك ميداس وعادت لتغيير كل شيء إلى ما كان عليه من قبل. قال الملك ميداس "شكراً جزيلاً". "لن أعتقد أبداً أن الذهب مهم جداً مرة أخرى!"

### The moral of the story:

- Your family is more important than money and material things.

عائلتك أهم من المال والأشياء المادية.

**Read again and answer T (True) or F (False).**

1. King Midas only loved gold.
2. King Midas helped the goat.
3. King Midas was sad when everything changed to gold.
4. The goat didn't change Marigold back into a human.




# P PRONUNCIATION



bear  
دُب



wear  
يرتدى



tear  
يمزق



pear  
كمثرى



share  
يشارك



rare  
نادر



hair  
شعر



pair of  
زوج من



air  
هواء



there  
هناك

## Study the sound /er/



That gemstone is very **rare** - it's not easy to find.

هذا الحجر الكريم نادر جدًا ، ليس من السهل العثور عليه.



This **pear** looks delicious.

هذه الكمثرى تبدو لذيذة.



There's a **pair** of brown shoes.

هناك زوج من الأحذية البنية.



I like walking in the fresh **air**.

أحب التمشية في الهواء النقي.



Don't pull that. You'll **tear** it!

لا تسحب ذلك. سوف تمزقها!



What do you want to **wear** today?

ماذا تريد أن ترتدي اليوم؟



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's .....  
a) mask                      b) head                      c) beard                      d) snake
- Tutankhamun's mask was found in his .....  
a) pyramid                      b) tomb                      c) house                      d) home
- The mask is .....  
a) glass                      b) bronze                      c) gold                      d) silver
- There's also a ..... on the top of his head.  
a) hippo                      b) ibis                      c) falcon                      d) snake

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- The king was walking in his garden when he ..... over something on the ground.  
a) tripped                      b) trapped                      c) hugged                      d) tore
- When the king ..... his daughter, she also turned to gold.  
a) hated                      b) stayed                      c) produced                      d) hugged
- King Midas started crying and his ..... fell on his precious roses.  
a) eyes                      b) legs                      c) tears                      d) pears
- The Ancient Egyptians ..... with other countries.  
a) used                      b) formed                      c) felt                      d) traded

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

gold - rose - daughter - son

Many years ago, there lived a king called King Midas. He loved three things more than anything else: his 1) ....., Marigold, his 2) ..... garden, and 3) ..... His favorite thing was to spend time in his garden with Marigold. But he also liked to look at all the gold in his castle.



4

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than rocks, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons, so that they could hunt on the land, and grow food. Gold was a popular metal for making jewelry and art to sell. Silver was also used, but was rarer. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian economy to improve.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The general idea of the text is about .....  
a) metal                      b) paper                      c) glass                      d) rock
- Metal was ..... than rocks.  
a) softer                      b) harder                      c) smaller                      d) bigger

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- Why did the Ancient Egyptians use metal? .....
- What was gold used for? .....
- What does the underlined pronoun "They" refer to? .....

5

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- Egyptians - with - The Ancient - traded - countries - other - .  
.....
- under - The whiteboard - the - is - clock - .  
.....

6

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- The eraser is ..... (behind) to the book.
- The cat is in front ..... (on) the door.
- There's a boy ..... (in front of) the door. I can't see him.
- The ball is ..... (on) the desk and the chair.

7

**Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

Guiding elements:

Tutankhamun's mask

(beautiful artifacts - tomb)



# Lessons (4 & 5)

## WRITING: A FACT FILE PROJECT

### Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

iron	حديد	dagger	خنجر	mine	منجم
meteorite	حجر نيزكي	precious	ثمين	Scarab Amulet	تميمة الخنفساء (الجعران)

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

copper	نحاس	rarer	أكثر ندرة	salts	أملاح
bronze	برونز	gallery	معرض فنون	items	أشياء
craftsmen	حرفيين	mirror	مرآة	sheet	لوح / صفيحة

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
mine	يستخرج معادن	mined	mined
appear	يظهر	appeared	appeared
decorate	يُزين	decorated	decorated
destroy	يدمر	destroyed	destroyed
melt	ينصهر	melted	melted

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
wear	يرتدى	wore	worn
bring	يحضّر / يجلب	brought	brought

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

the result of	نتيجة الـ	difficult to use	من الصعب استخدامه
but later on	لكن فيما بعد	the metal of heaven	معادن السماء (الجنة)
with the image of..	على شكل...	agricultural tools	أدوات زراعية
a very hot fire	نار حامية جدًا	bring good fortune	يجلب الحظ السعيد



## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

## Iron in Ancient Egypt

الحديد في مصر القديمة

## When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze.



meteorites

بدأ المصريون القدماء في استخدام الحديد منذ أكثر من 5000 عام. قبل الحديد، كانوا يعملون بالنحاس والبرونز.

## Where did they find iron?

Amazingly, some of their early iron was from **meteorites**. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous **dagger** for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.

ومن المثير للدهشة أن بعض الحديد الذي استخدموه في أول الأمر كان من النيازك. صنع الحرفيون المصريون القدماء الخنجر الشهير لمقبرة توت عنخ آمون من الحجر النيزكي. كما قاموا باستخراج الحديد من الأرض. لكنهم وجدوا أنه من الصعب جدًا استخدامه لأنه يحتاج إلى نار حامية جدًا حتى ينصهر، وهو ما لم يكن ممكنًا في كثير من الأحيان.



dagger



mine

## Why did they think iron was special?

They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of heaven". For them, iron was more **precious** than gold because it was rarer.

لقد اعتقدوا أن الحديد مميز لأنهم اعتقدوا أنه يأتي من السماء (بسبب النيازك). أطلقوا عليه اسم "معدن السماء". بالنسبة لهم، كان الحديد أغلى من الذهب لأنه كان أكثر ندرة.

## What did they use iron for?

Early on, the Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

في البداية، استخدم المصريون القدماء الحديد في صناعة الأشياء الصغيرة، مثل المجوهرات. كان النحاس والبرونز من المعادن الشائعة في صناعة الأدوات لأنه كان من السهل العثور عليهم. ولكن فيما بعد بدأ ظهور الأدوات الزراعية والأسلحة الحديدية. وكان هذا نتيجة حصول المصريين القدماء على المزيد من الحديد من خلال التجارة مع الدول الأخرى.



## Writing

★ When we write a fact file about something, we make notes under the following headings:

(When....? - Why....? - Where....? - What....?)

عند كتابة ملف حقائق عن شيء ما ندون ملاحظات تحت هذه العناوين (متي....؟ - لماذا....؟ - أين....؟ - ماذا....؟)

### Fact File: Silver in Ancient Egypt

1 When did the Ancient Egyptians start using silver?

متى بدأ المصريون القدماء في استخدام الفضة؟

They started using silver thousands of years ago.

بدأوا في استخدام الفضة منذ آلاف السنين.



2 Where did they find the silver?

أين وجدوا الفضة؟

There weren't many silver mines in Egypt, so we think they brought it from other countries through trade.

لم يكن هناك الكثير من مناجم الفضة في مصر، لذلك نعتقد أنهم جلبوها من بلدان أخرى عن طريق التجارة.

3 What did the Ancient Egyptians use silver for?

فيم استخدم المصريون القدماء الفضة؟

They used it to make jewelry and mirrors. They also used sheet silver to decorate statues.

استخدموها لصنع المجوهرات والمرايا. استخدموا أيضًا صفائح الفضة لتزيين التماثيل.



4 Why don't we find many silver Ancient Egyptian artifacts?

لماذا لا نجد الكثير من التحف الفضية المصرية القديمة؟

Because silver is not very durable. Sadly, the salts in the tombs destroyed a lot of it, so we cannot see very much of it today.

لأن الفضة ليست متينة للغاية. ومن المؤسف أن الأملاح الموجودة في المقابر دمرت الكثير منها، لذلك لا يمكننا رؤية الكثير منها اليوم.

### Note

عند كتابة ملف حقائق اتبع الآتي:

◆ Research facts.

ابحث عن حقائق.

◆ Use correct English.

استخدم لغة انجليزية صحيحة.

◆ Use formal language and the past tense.

استخدم لغة رسمية وزمن الماضي البسيط.

◆ Divide the text into questions.

قُم بتقسيم النص إلى أسئلة.



Write a fact file about "A metal or material".





# Project

☀ Do research on the Scarab Amulet and make notes on:

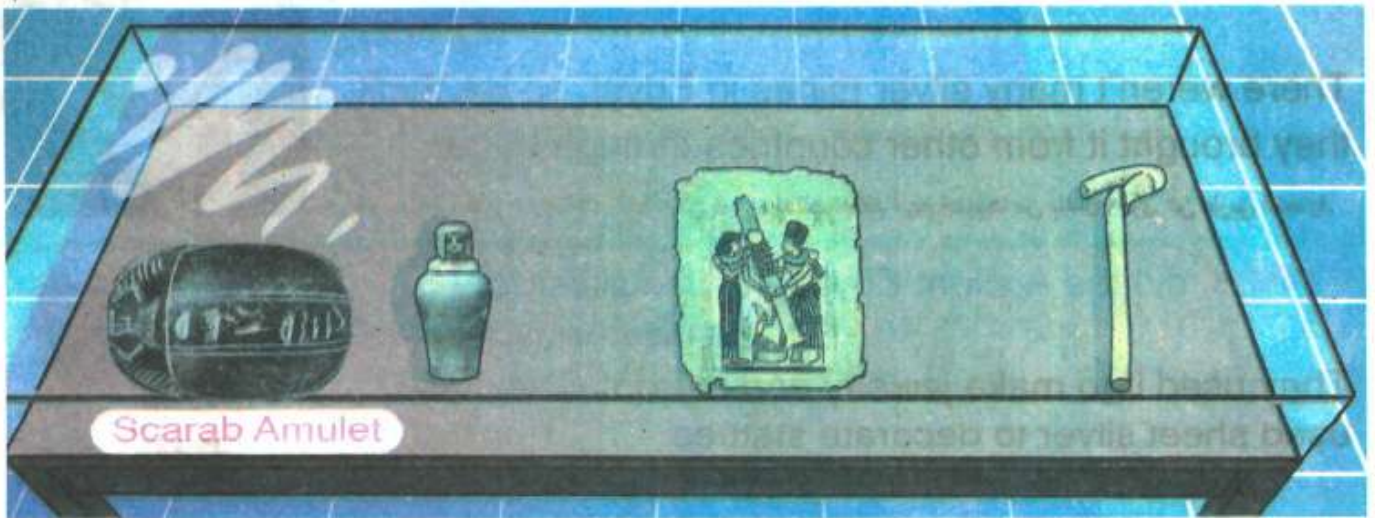
- What is it?

- Where is it from?

- How old is it?

- What is it made of?

- What was it used for?



## Scarab Amulet

Egypt

This scarab amulet is an artifact from Ancient Egypt and is more than three thousand years old. It is made of copper. People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune.

تميمة الخنفساء (الجعران)

مصر

تميمة الجعران هذه من مصر القديمة ويبلغ عمرها أكثر من ثلاثة آلاف عام. وهي مصنوعة من النحاس. كان الناس يرتدون المجوهرات التي تحمل صورة الجعران لحمايتهم وجلب الحظ السعيد لهم.



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians used iron for ..... items.  
a) small      b) big      c) long      d) huge
2. Copper and ..... were common metals for tools.  
a) gold      b) silver      c) bronze      d) iron
3. Later on, iron agricultural ..... and weapons began to appear.  
a) balls      b) pools      c) walls      d) tools
4. The Ancient Egyptians got more ..... through trade.  
a) gold      b) iron      c) rocks      d) silver

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some of the Ancient Egyptians' iron was from .....  
a) sand      b) glass      c) meteorites      d) salt
2. Ancient Egyptians craftsmen made a famous ..... for Tutankhamun's tomb from meteorite.  
a) fork      b) glasses      c) watch      d) dagger
3. The Ancient Egyptians also ..... iron from the ground.  
a) mined      b) destroyed      c) appeared      d) decorated
4. Iron was more ..... than gold because it was rarer.  
a) cheap      b) precious      c) easy      d) normal

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

jewelry - years - days - copper

The scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt. It is more than three thousand ..... old. It is made of 2) ..... People wore 3) ..... with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them good fortune.



4

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The text is about ..... in Ancient Egypt.  
a) gold      b) silver      c) iron      d) bronze
- Before iron, they worked with ..... and bronze.  
a) silver      b) copper      c) gold      d) salt

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What did the Ancient craftsmen make? .....
- Why was it difficult to use iron? .....
- When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron? .....

5

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- and - were - Mum - dad - at - yesterday - work - .  
.....
- difficult - Why - was - to - iron - work - with - it - ?  
.....

6

**Punctuate the following.**

- where did they find iron
- the Ancient Egyptians used silver to make jewelry

7

**Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:****Silver in Ancient Egypt****Guiding elements:**

- When did the Ancient Egyptians use it?
- Where did they find it?



# Writing Corner

## Ancient Egyptian Artifacts

There are so many artifacts from Ancient Egypt. We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone. They used other materials like glass, clay and gold too.

## Animals in Ancient Egypt

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain.

## Tutankhamun's Mask

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.

## Iron in Ancient Egypt

The Ancient Egyptians used iron 5,000 years ago. Some of their early iron was from meteorites. They also mined it from the ground. They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky. They called it "the metal of heaven". They used it for making jewelry, agricultural tools and weapons.



# Review on Unit (7)

## Vocabulary

artifacts	قطع أثرية / مصنوعات يدوية	trade	تجارة / يتاجر
preserve	يحفظ	metal	معدن
durable	متين	weapon	سلاح
fascinating	رائع / جذاب / مذهل	economy	اقتصاد
granite	جرانيت	trip over	يطأ على / يدوس على
glass	زجاج	hug	يحتضن
clay	صلصال / فخار	tears	دموع
gold	ذهب	stone	حجر
baboon	قرد البابون	iron	حديد
monkey	قرد	meteorite	حجر نيزكي
rat	فأر	dagger	خنجر
crocodile	تمساح	precious	ثمين
hippo	فرس النهر	mine	منجم / يستخرج معادن
falcon	صقر	copper	نحاس
ibis	طائر أبو منجل	bronze	برونز
snake	ثعبان	craftsmen	حرفيين
grain	حبوب	mummify	يحنط
adore	يُحب بشدة / يعشق	statue	تمثال
wisdom	حكمة	melt	يذوب / ينصهر

## Pronunciation

bear	دُب	share	يُشارك	pair	زوج من
pear	كمثرى	rare	نادر	hair	شعر
tear	يمزق	there	هناك	air	هواء
wear	يرتدى				

## Prepositions of place

in	في	under	تحت	between	بين
on	على	behind	خلف	next to	بجوار
in front of	أمام				



# Language

## The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

### Form التكوين

#### - The second form of the verb.

يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل. (بإضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم والفعل غير المنتظم يحفظ).

e.g. He **dropped** the glass.

- She **became** a teacher.

### Negative النفي

**Subject** (الفاعل) + **didn't** + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. Rats **didn't eat** the grain.

- I **didn't grow** up in Cairo.

### Question السؤال

**(Yes / No) question:** **Did + subject** (الفاعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) ?

e.g. **Did** the Ancient Egyptians only **keep** cats as pets?

- Yes, they did.

- No, they didn't.

**Wh-question:** **Q.W + did + subject** (الفاعل) + **inf.** (مصدر الفعل) ?

e.g. **What did** they **feed** their cats?

## Verb to be in the past

### Form التكوين

**Subject + (was / were) + باقي الجملة**

e.g. There **was** a cat here.

### Negative النفي

**Subject + (wasn't / weren't) + باقي الجملة**

e.g. There **weren't** popular pets.

### Question السؤال

**(Yes / No) question:** **(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة** ?

e.g. **Were** there a lot of mummies?

- Yes, there were.

- No, there weren't.

### Wh-question:

**Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة** ?

e.g. **Which was** their favorite animal?



# Dictation on Unit (7)

## Lesson (1)

.....	قطع أثرية	.....	جرانيت
.....	يحفظ	.....	زجاج
.....	متين	.....	صلصال / فخار
.....	مذهل / خلاب	.....	ذهب

## Lesson (2)

.....	قرد	.....	فرس النهر
.....	قرد البابون	.....	صقر
.....	فأر	.....	طائر أبو منجل
.....	تمساح	.....	ثعبان
.....	حبوب	.....	تمثال
.....	يُحب بشدة / يعشق	.....	يحنط
.....	حكمة	.....	حيوان

## Lesson (3)

.....	تجارة	.....	يطأ على / يدوس على
.....	معدن	.....	يحتضن
.....	سلاح	.....	دموع
.....	اقتصاد	.....	حجر

## Lessons (4 & 5)

.....	حديد	.....	ثمين
.....	حجر نيزكي	.....	منجم
.....	خنجر	.....	نحاس
.....	حرفيين	.....	برونز
.....	أكثر ندرة	.....	مرآة



# Activities on Unit (7)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- The Ancient Egyptians ..... with other countries.  
a) played      b) fought      c) traded      d) acted
- They first found metal in .....  
a) clubs      b) rocks      c) temples      d) pyramids
- They could melt metal into different .....  
a) artifacts      b) fruits      c) sports      d) shapes
- They used metal to make tools and .....  
a) weapons      b) coins      c) rocks      d) money

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Hot and dry climate helps to ..... artifacts.  
a) damage      b) preserve      c) welcome      d) cover
- Falcons and the ibis represented ..... in Ancient Egypt.  
a) wisdom      b) statues      c) grain      d) rocks
- Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian .....  
a) science      b) history      c) economy      d) art

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

weapons - metals - Copper - countries

The Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry.

1) ..... and bronze were common 2) ..... for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and 3) ..... began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

One night, King Midas was walking in his garden when he tripped over something on the ground. It was a strange-looking goat. It looked very sick. King Midas was a kind man, so he took the goat into his castle. There, he gave it food and a warm bed. In the morning, the goat felt much better. "I would like to thank you, King Midas," said the goat.



"What would you like more than anything else in the world?" King Midas thought for a minute, then said, "I would like everything I touch to turn into gold." "OK," said the goat, and made the king's wish come true.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- King Midas went to his garden .....  
a) on foot      b) on a horse      c) on a donkey      d) on a goat
- The goat looked very .....  
a) well      b) good      c) excited      d) sick

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What did the king give the goat? .....
- What was the king like? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- his - on - The king's - precious - fell - roses - tears - .  
.....
- found - The Ancient - metals - Egyptians - the - in - rocks - .  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- Rats didn't ..... (eats) the grain.
- ..... (Do) the Ancient Egyptians keep cats as pets?

**7 Punctuate the following.**

- the ibis represented wisdom .....
- what do you want to wear today .....

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Iron in Ancient Egypt**

**Guiding elements:**

- When did the Ancient Egyptians use it?
- Where did they find it?



# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

boat - do - Park - did - go

- Mayar : Hi Nesma! Did you have a nice weekend?  
 Nesma : Hi Mayar! Yes, I 1) .....  
 Mayar : Where did you 2) ..... ?  
 Nesma : I went to Al-Azhar 3) .....  
 Mayar : What did you 4) ..... there?  
 Nesma : I had a picnic, then I went on a 5) ..... trip.



## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

sky - mined - find - ago - special

- Omar : When did the Ancient Egyptians start using iron?  
 Ali : They started using it 5,000 years 1) .....  
 Omar : Where did they 2) ..... it?  
 Ali : They 3) ..... it from the ground.  
 Omar : Why did they think iron was 4) ..... ?  
 Ali : Because they believed it came from the 5) .....

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |           |         |           |       |         |
|-----------|---------|-----------|-------|---------|
| 1. baboon | hippo   | crocodile | ibis  | (.....) |
| 2. rat    | granite | glass     | clay  | (.....) |
| 3. play   | visit   | save      | saw   | (.....) |
| 4. on     | in      | is        | under | (.....) |
| 5. went   | ate     | work      | found | (.....) |



## Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |                |         |             |          |         |
|----------------|---------|-------------|----------|---------|
| 1. do          | pear    | wear        | tear     | (.....) |
| 2. gold        | bronze  | copper      | school   | (.....) |
| 3. in front of | next to | box         | behind   | (.....) |
| 4. yesterday   | last    | in the past | tomorrow | (.....) |
| 5. Where       | White   | When        | What     | (.....) |



# Unit 8

## Toys and games

### In this unit, the students will ...

- listen, read, discuss, and write about games, toys, and activities.
- listen to and read a dialog about old toys and games.
- use verb intensifiers.
- listen to and understand a story about a toy.
- use verbs that are followed by -ing.
- spell and say words containing gh or ght.
- use pie charts and bar graphs.
- write a description of your favorite game.
- design and make a simple board game.



# Lesson (1)

# A BOX OF TOYS

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



doll's house

بيت الدمية



rollerblades

حذاء التزلج (زلجات)



action figure

شخصية حركية



marbles

البلي



board game

لعبة لوحية



cuddly toy

لعبة محشوة



train set

لعبة القطار



skateboard

لوح التزلج

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

favorite	مفضل	actually	في الحقيقة - بالفعل	younger	أصغر سنًا
toys	ألعاب	too	أيضًا	fast	سريع - بسرعة
both	كلًا من	again	مرة أخرى	cool	رائع
brilliant	رائع	a while	فترة - وقت قليل	older	أكبر سنًا
box	صندوق	though	مع ذلك - رغم ذلك	later	لاحقًا

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
visit	يزور	visited	visited
love	يحب	loved	loved
find	يجد	found	found
make up	يخترع	made up	made up
beat	يهزم	beat	beaten
know	يعرف	knew	known

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

on the weekend	في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	after a while	بعد فترة من الوقت
love + (v -ing)	يحب	too (+ adj)	جداً
look for	يبحث عن	I'd love to + inf.	أود أن ...
go fast	يسير بسرعة	very often	كثيراً
So did I!	وأنا كذلك!	lots of	كثير من
play with	يلعب بـ مع	after a while	بعد فترة قصيرة

## Definitions.

تعريفات

beat	be more successful than someone in a game	يهزم
have a go	try something	يجرب شيئاً ما
made up	thought of or invented	اخترع

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Fares : Did you visit your grandma on the weekend, Yaseen?

هل زرت جدتك في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع يا ياسين؟

Yaseen : Yes, I did. I found a box of my old toys at her house, actually.

نعم فعلت. لقد وجدت صندوق ألعابي القديمة في منزلها، بالفعل.

Adam : What did you find in there?

ماذا وجدت فيه؟

Yaseen : There was an **action figure**. I loved playing with it!

كان هناك شخصية حركية. كنت أحب اللعب بها!

Fares : I loved playing with my old action figures, too! I **made up** lots of

games for them. كنت أحب اللعب بشخصياتي الحركية القديمة أيضاً! لقد اخترعت الكثير من الألعاب لهم.

Adam : When I was younger, my favorite toy was a **train set**.

عندما كنت أصغر سناً، كانت لعبتي المفضلة هي لعبة القطار.



## Lesson (1)

**Yaseen** : I didn't have a train set, but my sister had a big **doll's house**. We both played with it. I don't know where it is now. I found my old **rollerblades**, though.

لم يكن لدي لعبة قطار، لكن أختي كان لديها بيت دمية كبير. كنا نلعب به. لا أعرف أين هو الآن. لقد وجدت زلاجاتي القديمة، بالرغم من ذلك.

**Adam** : Brilliant! Did you **have a go** on them? رائع! هل جربتهم؟

**Yaseen** : No, I wanted to, but they were too small. لا، أردت ذلك، لكنها كانت صغيرة جدًا.

**Fares** : I didn't have rollerblades, but I had a **skateboard**. I could go really fast after a while!

لم يكن لدي حذاء تزلج، لكن كان لدي لوح تزلج. كنت أستطيع أن أسير بسرعة كبيرة بعد فترة من الوقت!

**Yaseen** : Cool! Did you play **board games** when you were younger?

رائع! هل كنت تلعب ألعاب لوحية عندما كنت أصغر سنًا؟

**Fares** : Yes, we played board games. I played with my older brother, but he usually beat me!

نعم، لقد لعبنا ألعاب لوحية. كنت أَلعب مع أخي الأكبر، لكنه عادة ما كان يهزمني!

**Adam** : We didn't play board games very often, but we played **marbles**.

لم تكن نلعب ألعاب لوحية كثيرًا، لكننا لعبنا البلي.

**Fares** : So did I! I think I'll look for some of my old toys later. I'd love to see my favorite **cuddly toy** again.

وأنا كذلك! أعتقد أنني سأبحث عن بعض ألعابي القديمة لاحقًا. أحب أن أرى لعبتي المحشوة المفضلة مرة أخرى.

### Ask and answer.

### اسأل وأجب.



When you were younger, what was your favorite toy?

عندما كنت أصغر سنًا، ماذا كانت لعبتك المفضلة؟

My favorite toy was a skateboard.

كانت لعبتي المفضلة لوح التزلج.





# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Fares and Yaseen are .....  
a) friends      b) brothers      c) cousins      d) uncles
- They visited grandma .....  
a) yesterday      b) on the weekend      c) tomorrow      d) last week
- Fares loved playing with a/an .....  
a) train set      b) action figure      c) skateboard      d) doll's house
- Yaseen's ..... had a doll's house.  
a) brother      b) sister      c) cousin      d) mum

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- I visited my uncle ..... the weekend.  
a) in      b) on      c) for      d) by
- I have an action ..... I love playing with it.  
a) game      b) finger      c) figure      d) doll
- I could go really fast on my .....  
a) marbles      b) skateboard      c) doll      d) train
- Did you have a ..... on your rollerblades?  
a) go      b) play      c) went      d) ride
- I loved ..... with my action figures.  
a) play      b) played      c) playing      d) plays
- I could go really fast on my skateboard after a .....  
a) while      b) when      c) what      d) time

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**playing - figures - make - box**

I have a box of toys. I love 1) ..... with my toys. I have some action 2) ..... I 3) ..... up lots of games for them. I always play with my brother. We have a great time together.



## Lesson (1)

4

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

I'm Sarah. I'm twelve years old. I visited my grandma on the weekend. I found a box of my old toys at her house. I was so excited to see all my old toys. I found an action figure. I loved playing with it. I found my old rollerblades, too. I was very happy to have a go on them again.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Sarah visited her grandma on .....  
a) Monday      b) Tuesday      c) Wednesday      d) the weekend
- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to the .....  
a) train set      b) action figure      c) marble      d) box

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What did Sarah find at her grandma's house? .....
- Why was Sarah very happy? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

5

**Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

- was - I - had - When - younger, - I - set - a train - .  
.....

- you - a go - Did - on - have - rollerbaldes - ?  
.....

- love to - my favorite - see - I'd - toy - cuddly - .  
.....

6

**Punctuate the following.**

- what did you find in your box .....
- fares is in grade six

7

**Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**My box of toys when I was younger**

**Guiding elements:** - What did you find in it? - What is your favorite toy?



# Lesson (2)

# I WAS VERY GOOD AT HIDE AND SEEK

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



skipping

نط الحبل



hide and seek

لعبة الاستغماية - الغميضة



hopscotch

لعبة المربعات (الحجلة)

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

helmet	خوذة	knee pads	وسادات الركبة	interesting	شيق
project	مشروع	colored chalk	طباشير ملون	little	صغير السن
climbing	التسلق	imagination	خيال	running	الجري
stickers	ملصقات	fun	متعة	best places	أفضل الأماكن
together	مقا - سوياً	difficult	صعب	outside	بالخارج

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	P.P	Present	Past	P.P
practice	يتدرب	practiced	hurt	يؤلم / يؤذي	hurt
like	يحب	liked	hide	يختبئ	hidden
prefer	يفضل	preferred	draw	يرسم	drawn
start	يبدأ	started	think	يعتقد / يفكر	thought
get	يحصل على	got	ride	يركب	ridden
fall off	يقع	fallen off	wear	يرتدي	worn

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وأحرف جر هامة

good <b>at</b> + (v + ing / noun)	جيد في	prefer	يفضل
<b>at</b> all	إطلاقاً	like	يحب
make <b>up</b> stories	يؤلف قصص	enjoy	يستمتع بـ
<b>for</b> a long time	لفترة طويلة	quite	إلى حد ما
play <b>with</b>	يلعب مع / بـ	look like	يشبه

+ v - ing



## Lesson (2)

### Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Sarah : Hi Rania, have you started the project about toys and games yet?

مرحبًا رانيا، هل بدأت مشروع لعب الأطفال والألعاب بعد؟

Rania : Hi Sarah. Yes, I started it on the weekend. It's **really** interesting!

مرحبًا سارة. نعم، لقد بدأت في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه مثير للاهتمام حقًا!

Sarah : Yes, it is. What games did you like playing when you were younger?

نعم إنه كذلك. ما هي الألعاب التي كنت تحبين لعبها عندما كنت أصغر سنًا؟

Rania : I thought **hide and seek** was fun. I was **very** good at hiding!

اعتقدت أن الغمضة كانت ممتعة. لقد كنت جيدة جدًا في الاختباء!

Sarah : I was good at it, too! I could hide for a **very** long time. I also **really** liked playing **hopscotch** with my friends. We used different colored chalk to draw the squares.

لقد كنت جيدة في ذلك أيضًا! كنت أستطيع الاختباء لفترة طويلة جدًا. أنا أيضًا أحببت حقًا لعب الحجلة مع أصدقائي.

استخدمنا طباشيرًا بألوان مختلفة لرسم المربعات.

Rania : I thought hopscotch was **quite** good, but I preferred **skipping**.

كنت أظن أن الحجلة جيدة جدًا، لكنني كنت أفضل نط الحبل.

Sarah : I liked skipping, but I wasn't **very** good at it. Some skipping games are **so** difficult!

كنت أحب نط الحبل، لكنني لم أكن جيدة في ذلك. بعض ألعاب نط الحبل صعبة للغاية!

Rania : Yes, they are. I had to practice a lot with my sister!

نعم إنها كذلك. كان علي أن أتدرب كثيرًا مع أختي!

Sarah : Ah, my brother didn't practice with me. He didn't like skipping at all! We often played marbles together, though.

أه، أخي لم يتدرب معي. لم يكن يحب نط الحبل على الإطلاق! رغم ذلك، كنا نلعب البلي معًا في كثير من الأحيان.

### - Read again. Write T (True) or F (False).

1. Sarah wasn't good at hide and seek. ( )
2. Rania thinks skipping is better than hopscotch. ( )
3. Rania and her sister practiced skipping together. ( )
4. Sarah played marbles with her sister. ( )



## Look and read the description.

## My Favorite Toy by Youssef



When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was **really** good fun. We all wanted to go **so** fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It **really** hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was **quite** small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

عندما كنت أصغر سنًا، كانت لعبتي المفضلة هي لوح التزلج. كنت أحب الذهاب إلى الحديقة واللعب مع أصدقائي. كان لديهم ألواح تزلج أيضًا، وكان الأمر ممتعًا حقًا. أردنا جميعًا أن نسير بسرعة جدًا! كان لوح التزلج الخاص بي أسود اللون وعليه ملصقات برتقالية وصفراء. اضطررت إلى ارتداء خوذة ووسادات للركبة. إنه أمر مؤلم حقًا إذا سقطت من على لوح التزلج! حصلت على أول لوح تزلج عندما كنت في الثامنة من عمري، وكان صغيرًا إلى حد ما. أنا لا أستخدمه على الإطلاق الآن، لأن لدي واحد أكبر.

## Look and read.



When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at making up stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.

عندما كانت أمينة صغيرة، كانت تحب جدًا الألعاب التي تستخدم الكثير من الخيال. كانت جيدة جدًا في تأليف القصص. كان لديها بيت دمية، وبعض الألعاب المحشوة، وبعض الشخصيات الحركية.

Nour really enjoyed playing outside when she was younger. She liked running, climbing, and playing tennis. She was quite good at football, too.

كانت نور تستمتع حقًا باللعب في الخارج عندما كانت أصغر سنًا. كانت تحب الجري والتسلق ولعب التنس. لقد كانت جيدة جدًا في كرة القدم أيضًا.



## Look, ask and answer.

What did you enjoy playing when you were younger?

ما الذي كنت تستمتع بلعبه عندما كنت أصغر سنًا؟



I really enjoyed riding my bike.

كنت أستمتع جدًا بركوب دراجتي.





# Language Focus

## Intensifiers

عبارات التوكيد

- We use **intensifiers** to give a stronger meaning to **adjectives** and **verbs**.

نستخدم عبارات التوكيد لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.

1 لتقوية الصفة نستخدم (so و really , very) قبل الصفة.

e.g. I was **really / very good** at hiding.

Some skipping games are **so difficult**.

2 لتقوية الفعل نستخدم (really) قبل الفعل.

e.g. I **really liked** playing hopscotch.

3 نستخدم (at all) مع الجمل المنفية وتأتي في نهاية الجملة.

e.g. He **didn't** like skipping **at all**!

4 نستخدم (quite) لجعل الصفة أقل قوة.

e.g. She was **quite good** at football.

1

Choose the correct answer from **a, b, c, or d**.

- I ..... liked playing with cuddly toys when I was younger.  
a) really      b) very      c) so      d) at all
- My brother was ..... good at football. He always beat me!  
a) much      b) more      c) very      d) at all
- I ..... enjoyed playing marbles with my friends.  
a) very      b) so      c) really      d) quite
- I don't like skateboarding .....  
a) really      b) at all      c) very      d) so

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- He is ..... (at all) good at tennis.
- I think hopscotch is ..... (at all) good, but I prefer hide and seek.
- I don't like playing football ..... (really).
- Nadia has ..... (at all) pretty marbles.
- I ..... (very) enjoyed playing board games.
- Salma was really ..... (happily). She got the full mark.
- There is no milk in the fridge ..... (very).
- Manal ..... (at all) like playing hopscotch.



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Amina really liked .....  
a) games      b) drawing      c) playing      d) painting
2. Amina used a lot of .....  
a) money      b) imagination      c) stories      d) toys
3. She was very good at ..... up stories.  
a) taking      b) making      c) playing      d) reading
4. Amina had a ..... house.  
a) dog's      b) toy's      c) doll's      d) cat's

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I like playing ..... I'm very good at hiding.  
a) football      b) hide and seek      c) skipping      d) tennis
2. We use colored ..... to draw squares to play hopscotch.  
a) pencils      b) pens      c) chalk      d) stone
3. I always wear a ..... when I play with my skateboard.  
a) hat      b) cap      c) helmet      d) jacket
4. My sister liked ..... and climbing.  
a) running      b) run      c) runs      d) ran
5. What were you good ..... ?  
a) in      b) at      c) on      d) for

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

playing - outside - bigger - younger

I'm Nour. I really enjoyed playing 1) ..... when I was 2) .....  
I liked running, climbing and 3) ..... tennis. I was quite good at  
football, too. I also liked playing hopscotch.



## Lesson (2)

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. It really hurts if you fall off a skateboard! I got my first skateboard when I was eight, and it was quite small. I don't use it at all now, because I have a bigger one.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The text is about my favorite .....  
a) story                      b) toy                      c) book                      d) sport
- I loved playing with my toy at the .....  
a) school                      b) club                      c) park                      d) street

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- Who did you play with? .....
- What happens if you fall off a skateboard? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- quite - Skateboarding - good - is - .  
.....
- didn't - train sets - Asser - at - like - all - .  
.....

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Sarah .....(very) enjoys playing marbles.
- I don't like playing tennis .....(quite) .
- I think hopscotch is .....(at all) good, but I prefer hide and seek.
- I .....(so) like running.

### 7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Your favorite toy**

Guiding elements:

( skateboard - park )



# Lesson (3)

## WE LOVED PLAYING WITH OUR TRAIN SET

### Vocabulary

الكلمات

parents	الوالدان	boat	مركب - قارب
market	سوق	amazing	مذهل
plane	طائرة	posters	ملصقات
store	متجر - محل	machine	آلة
stall	كشك - دكان صغير	cloth	قماش

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
shop	يتسوق	shopped	shopped
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
continue	يستمر	continued	continued
share	يشارك	shared	shared
paint	يدهن - يلون	painting	painted
tidy up	يرتب	tidied up	tidied up
hate	يكره	hated	hated
finish	ينهي	finished	finished

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
show	يبين / يظهر / يوضح	showed	shown
fly	يطير	flew	flown
break	يكسر	broke	broken
say	يقول	said	said

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

at the store

في المتجر fly in a plane

يسافر بالطائرة



## Lesson (3)

### Definitions

تعريفات

<b>stall</b>	a large table that you use to sell things from at a market	كشك - دكانة صغيرة
<b>button</b>	what you touch to make a machine work	زر
<b>trunk</b>	the long nose of an elephant	(خرطوم / زلومة) الفيل
<b>sail</b>	strong pieces of cloth that make a boat move	شرع

### Listen to the story:

استمع للقصة.

#### The beginning:

Ali was tired. His parents were shopping at the market. It was a hot day. Ali's feet hurt, and he really wanted to go home.



"Are you OK, Ali?" asked Mom. "We've almost finished. We need tomatoes from this stall. Wait here, then I'll get you some lemonade."

كان علي متعباً. كان والداه يتسوقان في السوق. كان يوماً حاراً. كانت قدما على تؤلمه، وأراد حقا العودة إلى المنزل. سألته الأم «هل أنت بخير، يا علي؟». «لقد انتهينا تقريبا. نحتاج إلى الطماطم من هذا الكشك. انتظر هنا، ثم سأحضر لك بعض عصير الليمون».

"Thanks. Mom," said Ali. He waited, and then he saw a stall with toys made from wood and metal. There were boats, trains, and animals. Ali's parents were choosing vegetables, so Ali asked if he could look at the toys.

"OK," said Dad. "But we aren't buying toys today!"

"That's OK," said Ali. "I enjoy looking".

قال علي: «شكرا يا أمي». انتظر، ثم رأى كشكا به ألعاب مصنوعة من الخشب والمعدن. كانت هناك قوارب وقطارات وحيوانات. كان والدا علي يختاران الخضار، لذلك سأل علي عما إذا كان بإمكانه النظر إلى الألعاب.

قال الأب: «حسنا» «لكننا لن نشتري الألعاب اليوم! قال علي: هذا جيد». «أنا أستمع برؤية (الألعاب)».

#### The Middle:

An old man was sitting behind the stall, making a small cat out of wood. He saw Ali looking at the toys and smiled. The man picked up a train. "Look at this," he said. He pushed a button under the train, and the wheels turned.

"Do you like trains?" he asked.

كان رجل عجوز يجلس خلف الكشك، يصنع قطعة صغيرة من الخشب، رأى علي ينظر إلى الألعاب وابتسم. التقط الرجل قطارا. قال: «انظر إلى هذا». وضغط على زر تحت القطار، فانطلقت العجلات وعندما وضعه على الكشك بدأ يتحرك. سأل الرجل: «هل تحب القطارات؟».



"I stopped playing with my train set a few years ago." Ali replied. "But this is brilliant".

Ali looked at the train again. It was small, but very beautiful. The other toys on the stall were amazing, too. There was an elephant which moved its trunk. There was a boat with beautiful cloth sails.

أجاب علي: توقفت عن اللعب بقطاري قبل بضع سنوات. «لكن هذا رائع». نظر علي إلى القطار مرة أخرى. كان صغيراً، لكنه جميل جداً. كانت الألعاب الأخرى في الكشك مذهلة أيضاً. كان هناك فيل يحرك خرطومه. كان هناك قارب بأشعة جميلة مصنوعة من القماش.

### The End:

Ali's dad came to see. "Wow! My brother and I had a train like this when I was a child!" he said. "We loved playing with our train set." He picked up the train, smiling. "I'll take it!" said Dad.

Ali laughed. "I thought you said we weren't buying toys today, Dad!" Dad laughed. You can play with it too!"

جاء والد علي ليري. قال الأب: «واو! كان لدى أنا وأخي قطار مثل هذا عندما كنت طفلاً!». «لقد أحببنا اللعب بقطارنا». التقط القطار مبتسماً وقال: «سأخذه!». ضحك علي: «اعتقدت أنك قلت إننا لن نشتري ألعاب اليوم يا أبي!». ضحك الأب قائلاً: «يمكنك أن تلعب به أيضاً!».



### Read again and answer.

1. What was Ali doing?

.....

2. Did Ali like the toys?

.....

3. Who bought the toy?

.....



# Language Focus

## verb + (verb + ing)

Some verbs are followed by **verb + ing**:

بعض الأفعال يتبعها (فعل + ing):

like	يحب	continue	يستمر في	love	يحب
finish	ينهي	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	imagine	يتخيل
hate	يكره	stop	يتوقف عن	prefer	يفضل

e.g. I **enjoy looking** at the market stalls.

I **stopped playing** with my train set a few years ago.

- When a verb ends in "a consonant + e", take away the (-e) and add (-ing).  
إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف (e) قبله حرف ساكن نحذف حرف (e) قبل إضافة (ing).

e.g. write → writing      make → making      hike → hiking

- When a verb ends in "a vowel + consonant", write the last consonant twice and add (-ing).  
إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد.

e.g. run → running      swim → swimming      sit → sitting

### Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- Ghada prefers .....(play) board games.
- My sister stopped .....(let) me share her doll's house because I broke it.
- They finished .....(paint) the posters.
- Does he enjoy .....(read) adventure books?
- Ali likes .....(shop) at the market.
- On weekends I hate .....(get) up early.
- I think people should stop .....(throw) rubbish in the street.
- You should continue .....(exercise).
- Amal imagined .....(to fly) in a plane.
- I love .....(played) football.



# P PRONUNCIATION

## "gh"

"gh" sounds like /f/

تنطق "gh" مثل صوت /f/

drau <u>gh</u> ts	لعبة الداما	lau <u>gh</u> ter	الضحك	tou <u>gh</u>	متين - قاسي
cou <u>gh</u>	كحة	lau <u>gh</u>	يضحك	enou <u>gh</u>	كافي

"gh" is silent in most words.

تكون "gh" صامتة "لا تنطق" في معظم الكلمات.

bou <u>gh</u> t	اشترى	drou <u>gh</u> t	جفاف	hi <u>gh</u>	مرتفع - عالي
thou <u>gh</u> t	اعتقد / فكر	ei <u>gh</u> t	رقم ثمانية	dau <u>gh</u> ter	ابنة
ni <u>gh</u> t	ليلة	brou <u>gh</u> t	أحضر		

**Look and listen. Then listen again and repeat.**



This game is called **draughts**.  
We **laugh** when we play **draughts**.

Wael **bought** some marbles yesterday.



She **thought** about the toy that she **bought**.

A **drought** is when there isn't **enough** rain.



**Do these words have the sound /f/? Circle Y (Yes) or N (No).**

- |             |       |            |       |
|-------------|-------|------------|-------|
| 1. laughed  | Y / N | 5. thought | Y / N |
| 2. bought   | Y / N | 6. coughed | Y / N |
| 3. drought  | Y / N | 7. enough  | Y / N |
| 4. daughter | Y / N | 8. brought | Y / N |



# C LIL: Math

## Using Graphs

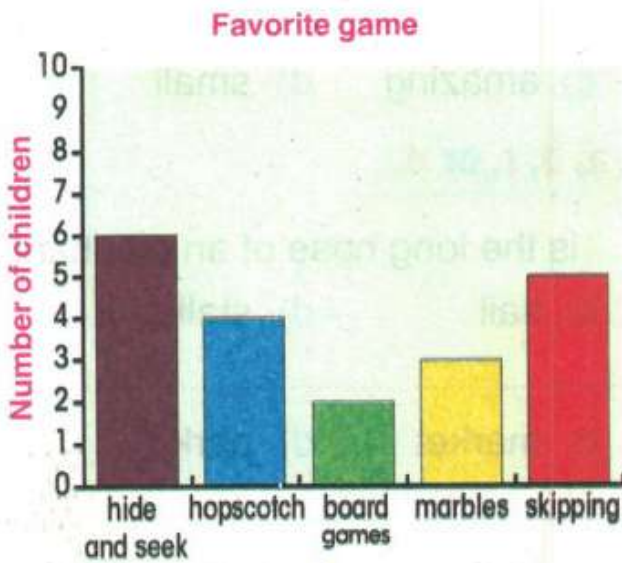
استخدام الرسم البياني (المخطط)

### 1 Bar graph

الرسم البياني الشريطي (بالأعمدة)

A bar graph is a chart that uses bars (or columns) to show amounts.

الرسم البياني الشريطي هو مخطط يستخدم أشرطة "أو أعمدة لإظهار الكميات"



How many children like skipping?

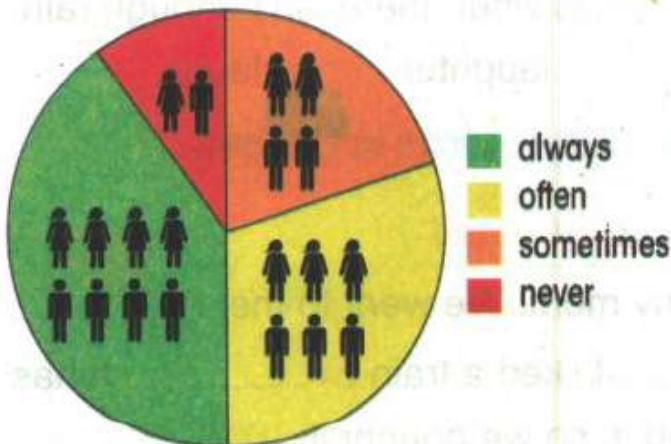
hide and seek	6
hopscotch	4
board games	2
marbles	3
skipping	5

### 2 Pie chart

المخطط الدائري

A pie chart is a type of graph that represents the data in the circular graph.

المخطط الدائري هو نوع من الرسم البياني يمثل البيانات في الرسم البياني الدائري.



1. Which group is the biggest?

2. Which group is the smallest?

3. What's the total of numbers?



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ali was ..... with his parents at the market.  
a) playing      b) shopping      c) writing      d) running
2. He saw a ..... that sold toys.  
a) stall      b) supermarket      c) mall      d) store
3. A ..... showed him how a train moved.  
a) girl      b) boy      c) woman      d) man
4. Ali thought the toys were .....  
a) boring      b) amazed      c) amazing      d) small

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A ..... is the long nose of an elephant.  
a) leg      b) trunk      c) sail      d) stall
2. We go shopping at the .....  
a) school      b) club      c) market      d) park
3. My sister likes toys. They're .....  
a) amazing      b) amazed      c) bad      d) interested
4. To make a toy move, you press this .....  
a) bottle      b) button      c) butter      d) wheel
5. A ..... is a strong piece of cloth that makes a boat move.  
a) sale      b) sell      c) sail      d) soil
6. A ..... is when there isn't enough rain.  
a) drought      b) draught      c) laughter      d) laugh

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

set - school - market - stall

Yesterday I went shopping with my mom. We went to the 1) .....  
There were a lot of toys at a 2) ..... I liked a train 3) ..... It has  
a button to make it move. My mom liked it, so we bought it.



4

## Read the text and answer the questions.

Ali is a student. He is in grade six. He went shopping with his parents at the market yesterday. He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed him how a train moved. He thought the toys were amazing. Ali's dad came to see the toys, too. He liked the train, so he bought it. He said Ali could play with it.

## A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The word "amazing" is similar to .....  
a) terrible      b) fantastic      c) good      d) interested
- The underlined pronoun "He" refers to .....  
a) Ali      b) Ali's mom      c) Ali's dad      d) the seller

## B) Answer the following questions.

- When did Ali go shopping? .....
- Where did he buy the toy from? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

5

## Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- laugh - play - We - draughts - when - we - .  
.....
- imagined - in - Aya - flying - plane - a - .  
.....

6

## Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- I didn't finish .....(do) my homework.
- You should stop .....(eat) too many sweets.
- I hate .....(watch) TV.
- My sister, Sarah, loves .....(paint) flowers.
- I can't imagine .....(live) on the moon.
- People should continue .....(learn) .



# Lessons (4 & 5)

## WRITING: A DESCRIPTION OF MY FAVORITE GAME

### Vocabulary

الكلمات

description	وصف	bricks	طوب
video games	ألعاب الفيديو	creative	مبدع - إبداعي
outside	بالخارج	adventure	مغامرة
dice	حجر النرد (الزهر)	kind = type = sort	نوع
different	مختلف	important	هام
although - though	بالرغم من - ومع ذلك	images = graphics	صور - رسومات
great	عظيم - رائع	ludo	لعبة لودو
games console	وحدة تحكم ألعاب	modern	حديث - معاصر

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
solve	يحل	solved	solved
call	يُسمى / يُنادى / يتصل	called	called
design	يصمم	designed	designed
share	يشارك	shared	shared
find	يجد	found	found
build	يبني	built	built

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

solve a problem	يحل مشكلة	an hour a day	ساعة في اليوم
about an hour	حوالي ساعة	too much	كثيرًا جدًا
build cities	يبني مدنًا	share with	يتشارك مع
once a week	مرة في الأسبوع	all kinds of	كل أنواع من



Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

My favorite video game

by Belal

I love playing all kinds of games. I play games outside with my friends, and at school we play hopscotch and board games. I also enjoy playing board games with my sister, although she often beats me!



أحب لعب جميع أنواع الألعاب. أعب الألعاب في الخارج مع أصدقائي، وفي المدرسة نلعب الحجلة والألعاب اللوحية. أنا أستمتع أيضًا بلعب الألعاب اللوحية مع أختي، على الرغم من أنها غالبًا ما تهزمني!

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I **like** these games **because** you can be creative and make something new.

العب المفضلة هي ألعاب الفيديو. ومع ذلك أنا لا أعبهم كثيرًا. أعب لمدة ساعة تقريبًا في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع. إنه أمر ممتع! العب المفضلة هي تلك التي تقوم فيها ببناء المدن. لقد صنعت مدينة كبيرة جدًا باستخدام طوب مختلف. وفيها حيوانات ونباتات أيضًا. أحب هذه الألعاب لأنه يمكنك أن تكون مبدعًا وتصنع شيئًا جديدًا.

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new **games console**, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult, but I **think** they can be fun, too, **because** they're so exciting.

بعض الصور في ألعاب الفيديو الحديثة مذهلة. لقد حصلت على وحدة تحكم ألعاب جديدة، وأنشأرتها مع أختي. إنها تستمتع بلعب ألعاب المغامرة، حيث يمكنك الذهاب إلى أماكن مختلفة للعثور على شيء مهم أو حل مشكلة. يمكن أن تكون صعبة ولكن أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون ممتعة أيضًا، لأنها مثيرة للغاية.

Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

يمكن أن تشكل ألعاب الفيديو مشكلة عندما تلعبها كثيرًا. ومع ذلك، أعتقد أنها يمكن أن تكون رائعة عندما تفعل شيئًا إبداعيًا أو مثيرًا للغاية. يمكنك غالبًا اللعب مع أصدقائك أيضًا.



Read the description again and circle the correct answer.

1. Belal plays (**board games / hopscotch**) with his sister.
2. Belal's favorite video games are ones where you build (**plants / cities**).
3. Some of the (**consoles / graphics**) in modern video games are amazing.





## Writing

### Opinion & Reason

الرأي والسبب

- عند التعبير عن الرأي نستخدم أفعال مثل: (like - think)

- عند التعبير عن السبب نستخدم (because)

e.g. I **like** these games **because** you can be creative and make something new.

I **think** they can be fun, too, **because** they're so exciting.

### How to write a description of a game

- عند كتابة وصف للعبة، قم بكتابة بعض الملاحظات والأفكار.

- استخدم كلمات تعبر عن الرأي والسبب الذي جعلك تحبها.

### My favorite game

إجابتك لبعض الأسئلة يمكن أن تساعدك في كتابة وصف لعبتك المفضلة:

- |                             |                                 |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------|
| - What is it called?        | Chess                           |
| - How do you play it?       | Move the pieces on the squares  |
| - How often do you play it? | Twice a week                    |
| - Who do you play with?     | My brother                      |
| - Why do you like it?       | It makes me think and be smart. |

I love playing all kinds of games. My favorite game is chess. It's a board game with white and black squares. I play it with my brother. We play it twice a week after school. A player can only move one piece at a time to the square of the other player. I like this game because it makes me think and be smart. I think it is a fun game because it's exciting.



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- My favorite games are .....  
a) hopscotch    b) computer games    c) draughts    d) video games
- I play for about ..... on the weekend.  
a) a while    b) all day    c) an hour    d) 30 minutes
- My favorite games are ones where you ..... cities.  
a) plant    b) do    c) make    d) build
- It has ..... and plants in it, too.  
a) animals    b) people    c) birds    d) fish

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Some of the ..... in modern video games are amazing.  
a) consoles    b) images    c) boards    d) wires
- I enjoy playing games where I find something .....  
a) important    b) boring    c) tiring    d) ugly
- Video games are ..... when they are creative.  
a) dirty    b) bad    c) great    d) damaged
- I have got a new games ..... ; which I share with my sister.  
a) console    b) box    c) image    d) draughts

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

playing - hide - ride - outside

I like playing games. I always play 1) ..... with my friends. We love playing 2) ..... and seek. We also enjoy 3) ..... board games. I think they can be fun because they're so exciting.



4

## Read the text and answer the questions.

Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting. Video games can be a problem when you play them too much. However, I think they can be great when you do something that is very creative or exciting. You can often play with your friends, too.

## A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The underlined word "images" is similar in meaning to .....  
a) graphics      b) games      c) graphs      d) sports
- Video games can be fun because they're so .....  
a) boring      b) excited      c) amazed      d) exciting

## B) Answer the following questions.

- What kind of games does your sister like? .....
- How can video games be a problem? .....
- What is the general idea of the text? .....

5

## Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- love - all - I - playing - games - kinds of - .  
.....

- your - game - What - favorite - is - ?  
.....

6

## Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite video game

## Guiding elements:

- What's it called?
- How do you play it?



# Writing Corner

## My favorite toy

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. My skateboard was blue with yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and knee pads. I got my first skateboard when I was ten on my birthday. I loved it very much.

## The games I enjoyed

When I was little, I really liked games and playing outside. I enjoyed riding my bike, running and playing tennis. I was very good at making up stories. I had some cuddly toys and some action figures. I was quite good at football. I also really liked playing hopscotch with my friends.

## Going shopping

Yesterday I went shopping with my parents at the market. I saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed me how a train set moved. I thought the toys were amazing. My mom liked the train set, so she bought it for me. I was very happy because I like playing with my toys.

## Playing

Playing is good for us in many different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends. From early times people played different games. In Ancient Egypt people played a game called senet. It's like chess. People often play to relax themselves and enjoy their time.



# Review on Unit (8)

## Vocabulary

marbles	البلي	doll's house	بيت الدمية	skateboard	لوح التزلج
cuddly toy	لعبة محشوة	rollerblades	حذاء التزلج (زلجات)	bricks	طوب
skipping	نط الحبل	images = graphics	صور - رسومات	modern	حديث
train set	لعبة القطار	games console	وحدة ألعاب	adventure	مغامرة
market	سوق	although - though	بالرغم من - ومع ذلك	creative	مبدع
posters	ملصقات	hide and seek	الاستغماية	stall	كشك
description	وصف	video games	ألعاب الفيديو	parents	الوالدان
outside	بالخارج	action figure	شخصية حركية	board game	لعبة لوحية
machine	آلة	hopscotch	لعبة المربعات (الحجلة)	amazing	مذهل

## Pronunciation

"gh" sounds like /f/

تنطق "gh" مثل صوت /f/.

draughts	لعبة الداما	laughter	الضحك	tough	متين - قاسي
cough	كحة / يكح	laugh	يضحك	enough	كافي

"gh" is silent in most words.

تكون "gh" صامتة "لا تنطق" في معظم الكلمات.

bought	اشتري	drought	جفاف	high	مرتفع - عالي
thought	أعتقد / فكر	eight	رقم ثمانية	daughter	ابنة
night	ليلة	brought	أحضر		

## Language

1) Intensifiers: (really / very / so + adj.) (really + verb) (Negative + at all)

e.g. I was really / very good at hiding.

I didn't like skipping at all.

2) Verbs followed by (verb + -ing):

(continue - finish - hate - imagine - like - prefer - stop)

e.g. I enjoy playing football.

I prefer making up stories.



# Dictation on Unit (8)

## Lesson (1)

.....	ألعاب أطفال	.....	شخصية حركية
.....	لعبة لوحية	.....	يجرب
.....	لعبة القطار	.....	يهزم
.....	يبحث عن	.....	أود أن
.....	كثير من	.....	لعبة محشوة
.....	منزل الدُمي	.....	يخترع
.....	حذاء التزلج (زلجات)	.....	لوح التزلج

## Lesson (2)

.....	لعبة الاستغماية	.....	مربعات
.....	الحجلة	.....	يفضل
.....	نط الحبل	.....	خيال
.....	إطلاقاً	.....	يؤلف قصص
.....	مشروع	.....	الجري
.....	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	.....	خوذة

## Lesson (3)

.....	التسوق	.....	(خرطوم / زلومة) الفيل
.....	سوق	.....	يستمر
.....	كشك - دكانة صغيرة	.....	يتخيل
.....	زر	.....	جفاف
.....	شراع	.....	لعبة الداما

## Lessons (4 & 5)

.....	وصف	.....	وحدة ألعاب
.....	يهزم	.....	صور - رسومات
.....	ألعاب الفيديو	.....	مبدع
.....	بالخارج	.....	يبني
.....	مشكلة	.....	مغامرة



# Activities on Unit (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When I was younger, I had a box of .....  
a) cakes      b) toys      c) marbles      d) games
2. I had a go on my .....  
a) skateboard      b) rollerblades      c) bike      d) car
3. My ..... liked playing with a doll's house.  
a) sister      b) brother      c) mom      d) dad
4. My brother usually ..... me when we played board games.  
a) paint      b) laugh      c) hit      d) beat

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You can go quite fast on .....  
a) hopscotch      b) rollerblades      c) train set      d) board games
2. My brother is really good at ..... and seek.  
a) cuddly      b) action      c) hide      d) ride
3. There are some wooden toys on the toy .....  
a) bank      b) stall      c) steel      d) sail

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

hour - week - play - because

My favorite games are video games. I don't 1) ..... them very often, though. I play for an 2) ..... on the weekend. I like these games 3) ..... you can be creative and make something new.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Video games have become one of the most popular games. All children play them. I like all kinds of games. I have a good time playing with my friends. Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console. I like playing adventure games where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. However, video games can be a problem when you play **them** too much.



## Activities

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The text is about .....  
a) football      b) video games      c) board games      d) tennis
- Don't play video games for a ..... time.  
a) short      b) long      c) much      d) good

### B) Answer the following questions.

- What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
- Do you like video games? .....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- football - think - I - so - is - exciting - .  
.....

- didn't - train sets - Adam - at all - like - .  
.....

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- I prefer ..... (play) board games to skipping.
- I think hopscotch is ..... (at all) good, but I prefer hide and seek.

### 7 Punctuate the following.

- hide and seek is really interesting .....
- what games were you good at .....

### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Your favorite toys**

Guiding elements:

( doll's house - action figure )



# Al-Azhar Corner

1

Read and complete the dialog with the following words.

rollerblades - box - playing - action - What

- Omar : Did you visit your grandma yesterday?  
 Adam : Yes, I did. I found a 1) ..... of my old toys.  
 Omar : 2) ..... did you find in there?  
 Adam : There was an 3) ..... figure.  
 Omar : I loved 4) ..... with action figures.  
 Adam : What's your favorite toy?  
 Omar : I like 5) .....



Read and complete the dialog with the following words.

good - enjoy - fine - up - really

- Sarah : Hi, Mona. How are you?  
 Mona : Hi, Sarah. I'm 1) .....  
 Sarah : What did you 2) ..... playing when you were younger?  
 Mona : I 3) ..... enjoyed riding my bike.  
 Sarah : What were you 4) ..... at?  
 Mona : I was very good at making 5) ..... stories.

2

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |             |               |         |            |         |
|-------------|---------------|---------|------------|---------|
| 1. shopping | Cairo         | working | swimming   | (.....) |
| 2. mom      | uncle         | dad     | brother    | (.....) |
| 3. stall    | market        | play    | toy shop   | (.....) |
| 4. skipping | hide and seek | bank    | hopscotch  | (.....) |
| 5. apples   | doll's house  | marbles | skateboard | (.....) |



Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |               |           |         |         |         |
|---------------|-----------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. cuddly toy | train set | marbles | running | (.....) |
| 2. enjoy      | notebook  | prefer  | like    | (.....) |
| 3. but        | really    | very    | so      | (.....) |
| 4. yellow     | game      | red     | green   | (.....) |
| 5. running    | climbing  | bike    | cycling | (.....) |



# February Test

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Cats are ..... pets around the world.  
a) sad      b) popular      c) ugly      d) bad
2. Cats are usually .....  
a) slow      b) friendly      c) angry      d) scared
3. Cats have sharp ..... and teeth.  
a) claws      b) fins      c) eyes      d) tails
4. Cats have ..... fur.  
a) long      b) hard      c) soft      d) tall

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A hot, dry climate helps ..... the artifacts for a long time.  
a) like      b) preserve      c) learn      d) build
2. I like ..... games for my action figures.  
a) breaking      b) making up      c) reading      d) throwing away
3. Farmers produce a lot of .....  
a) gold      b) grains      c) pets      d) iron

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sail - amazing - stall - train

Aya was shopping with her parents at the market. She saw a 1) ..... that sold toys. A man showed her how a 2) ..... moved. Aya thought the toys were 3) ..... Aya's dad came to see the toys. He liked the train, so he bought it.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hany is in grade six. He adores reading, especially short stories that he can find at the school library. His favorite story is "King Midas and the Golden Touch!". It's about a king who loves his daughter, his garden, and his gold more than any thing else in the world. One night, the king helped a sick goat that looked very sick. To thank him, it made his wish come true. The king could turn everything he touched into gold. Hany learned from the story that people we love are more precious than gold.



## A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Hany adores .....  
 a) eating                      b) drinking                      c) reading                      d) running
2. Hany is in grade .....  
 a) one                      b) two                      c) six                      d) five

## B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the morel of the story? .....
4. What did the king love? .....
5. What is Hany's favorite story? .....

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. you - visit - Did - grandpa - the weekend - on - ?  
 .....

2. love - playing - I - hopscotch - park - in the - .  
 .....

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. This film isn't interesting ..... (so).
2. Last month, I ..... (buy) a new mobile.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

1. when did they come back .....
2. i was very good at hiking .....

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

Guiding elements:

**Animals in Ancient Egypt**

1. Which animals did Ancient Egyptians want to keep?
  2. Why were cats important for them?
- .....
- .....



# Unit 9

## What's the story?

### In this unit, the students will ...

- listen and read about Goha and his stories.
- understand and discuss what makes a good story.
- use the past continuous.
- write the beginning and ending of a short story.
- listen to a short story about a boy and a wolf.
- use sequencing adverbs.
- learn how to say words with the sound /w/.
- take part in a cooperative storytelling project.



# Lesson (1)

# GOHA'S STORIES

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

setting	المكان و الزمان	narrator	راوي
characters	الشخصيات	moral	مغزى - عبرة - الدرس المستفاد
ending	خاتمة - نهاية	story	قصة

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

man	رجل	clever	ماهر - ذكي
son	ابن	great	عظيم
review	مقالة نقدية	details	تفاصيل
market	سوق - متجر	difference	اختلاف
countryside	الريف	popular	شعبى - محبوب
journey	رحلة طويلة	known	معروف
let	يترك - يدع	country	دولة
different	مختلف	Sudan	دولة السودان
should	ينبغي	Algeria	دولة الجزائر
must be	بالتأكيد	Morocco	دولة المغرب
tired	متعب	main	أساسي - رئيسي
both	كلاهما	funny	فكاهي - مرح

## Definitions

تعريفات

characters	the people or animals in a story	الشخصيات
ending	the last part of a story	خاتمة - نهاية
setting	the time and place where a story happens	المكان و الزمان
moral	the lesson you learn from a story	مغزى - عبرة - الدرس المستفاد
narrator	the person who tells the story	راوي



## Lesson (1)

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
pass	يمر	passed	passed
happen	يحدث	happened	happened
want	يريد	wanted	wanted
carve	ينحت	carved	carved

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
write	يكتب	wrote	written
go	يذهب	went	gone
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
give	يعطي	gave	given
teach	يُعلم	taught	taught
let	يسمح / يدع	let	let
know	يعرف	knew	known

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

many years ago	منذ عدة سنوات	take turns	يتبادل الأدوار
So do I. = me too.	وأنا أيضًا (كذلك).	all over the world	في كل أنحاء العالم
the same	نفس الشيء	(be) right about that	على حق في ذلك
in fact	في الحقيقة	have a turn	يأخذ دور
write about	يكتب عن	take place in	يحدث في

### Did you know?

People have told stories for thousands of years.

The Ancient Egyptians **carved** pictures to tell stories.

لقد روى الناس القصص منذ آلاف السنين. لقد نحت المصريون القدماء الصور لرواية القصص.





## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.



ماذا تفعلين يا لاما؟

## Why do the man and his son carry the donkey?

Mom : What are you doing, Lama?

Lama : I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The **setting** is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the **characters** – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the **ending** of the story, they both carry the donkey!

أنا أكتب مقالة نقدية لإحدى قصص جحا. قصة الرجل الذي يذهب إلى السوق ومعه ابنه وحماره. المكان هو الريف، والزمان منذ سنوات عديدة. يتناوب اثنان من الشخصيات – الرجل وابنه – على ركوب الحمار لأنها رحلة طويلة. عندما يركب الصبي الحمار، يقول الناس الذين يمرون إنه يجب أن يترك والده يركب. عندما يركب الرجل الحمار، يقولون إنه يجب أن يترك ابنه يأخذ دوره. ثم يقولون إن الحمار بالتأكد مُتعب. لذلك في نهاية القصة كلاهما يحمل الحمار!

Mom : Haha! His stories are both funny and clever, aren't they?

هاها! قصصه مضحكة وذكية، أليس كذلك؟

Lama : Yes, they are. He's a great **narrator**, too. I love the details he gives about the characters, the setting, and everything that happens.

نعم هي كذلك. إنه راوي عظيم أيضًا. أحب التفاصيل التي يقدمها عن الشخصيات والمكان والزمان وكل ما يحدث.

Mom : So do I. In fact, his stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by different names. For example, in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha.

وأنا أيضًا. في الواقع، تحظى قصصه بشعبية في جميع أنحاء العالم. لكنه معروف بأسماء مختلفة. على سبيل المثال، في السودان، هو جوحا. في الجزائر اسمه جيجا، وفي المغرب جها.

Lama : Are the stories the same in every country? هل القصص نفس الشيء في كل بلد؟

Mom : There are some differences, but they all have a **moral** that Goha wants to teach us. What do you think is the moral of this story?

هناك بعض الاختلافات ولكنها جميعًا بها مغزى يريد جحا تعليمه. في رأيك ما مغزى هذه القصة؟

Lama : That you can't make everyone happy. أنه لا يمكنك إسعاد الجميع.

Mom : I think Goha is right about that! أعتقد أن جحا على حق في ذلك!

Lama : Me, too. I'm happy that I know which story to write about, though!

وأنا أيضًا. أنا سعيدة لأنني أعرف أي قصة سأكتب عنها، رغم ذلك!



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- I'm writing a review of one of Goha's .....  
a) stories      b) books      c) plays      d) films
- The story is about a man who goes to the .....  
a) zoo      b) library      c) school      d) market
- The ..... is the countryside, many years ago.  
a) ending      b) setting      c) narrator      d) characters
- The man and his son take turns riding the .....  
a) bus      b) bike      c) donkey      d) car

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- ..... are the people or animals in a story.  
a) Endings      b) Characters      c) Settings      d) Narrators
- The ..... is the time and place where a story happens.  
a) setting      b) ending      c) moral      d) character
- The ..... is the lesson you learn from a story.  
a) moral      b) character      c) setting      d) ending
- The ..... is the person who tells the story.  
a) ending      b) character      c) setting      d) narrator

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**man - setting - characters - donkey**

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about  
a 1) ..... who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The  
2) ..... is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the  
3) ..... – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey  
because it's a long journey.



4

**Read the text then answer the questions.**

I'm Lama. I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey. When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of the story, they both carry the donkey! In Goha's stories there is a moral. The moral in this story is that you can't make everyone happy.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Lama is writing a ..... of one of Goha's stories.  
a) review      b) homework      c) notebook      d) search
- The underlined pronoun "he" refers to .....  
a) Goha      b) son      c) Lama      d) donkey

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What is the moral of this story? .....
- What do they do at the end of the story? .....
- Who are the main characters of the story? .....

5

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- are - main - There - two - characters - the - in - story - .  
.....
- the stories - same - Are - the - every - in - country - ?  
.....

6

**Punctuate the following.**

- why do the man and his son carry the donkey
- the farmer went to the market

7

**Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:****Your favorite story****Guiding elements:****( Goha - market )**



## Lesson (2)

## A MESSAGE IN A BOTTLE

### Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

message	رسالة	grandparents	الأجداد	bottle	زجاجة
surf	يركب الأمواج	beginning	بداية	important event	حدث مهم

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

near	قريب	granddad	جد	forest	غابة
quiet	هادئ	trash	قمامة	path	ممر
beautiful	جميل	better	أفضل	scared	خائف
sand	رمل	idea	فكرة	weather	طقس
glass	زجاج	space	فضاء	shining	مشرقة

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P	Present	Past	P.P
surf	يركب الأمواج	surf	surf	surf	surf
fold	يطوي	folded	folded	folded	folded
arrive	يصل	arrived	arrived	arrived	arrived
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched	watched	watched
call	يتصل	called	called	called	called
score	يسجل هدف	scored	scored	scored	scored
hope	يأمل	hoped	hoped	hoped	hoped
follow	يتبع	followed	followed	followed	followed
put	يضع	put	put	put	put
throw	يلقي / يرمى	threw	threw	threw	threw
ring	يرن	rang	rang	rang	rang
grow up	يكبر	grew up	grew up	grew up	grew up
forget	ينسى	forgot	forgot	forgot	forgot
send	يرسل	sent	sent	sent	sent
get	يحصل على	got	got	got	got
shine	تشرق - يلمع	shone	shone	shone	shone

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

by the sea	بجوار البحر	one day	ذات يوم	let's + inf	هيا بنا + (مصدر الفعل)
a piece of	قطعة من	come in	يدخل	throw out to sea	يلقي في البحر
back at .....	بالعودة إلى	walk along	يسير على امتداد	throw into sea	يلقي في البحر
many years passed	مرت سنوات عديدة	forget about	ينسى بشأن		



## Listen and read the beginning of the story.

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, **surf**, and played games on the sand.

عاش أجداد توم بجانب البحر. كان الشاطئ بالقرب من منزلهم هادئًا وجميلًا، وكان يحب الذهاب معهم إلى هناك. لقد سبحوا وركبوا الأمواج ولعبوا الألعاب على الرمال.

One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash."

في أحد الأيام، كانوا يسبحون في البحر عندما رأى توم زجاجة في الماء. قال: "انظر يا جدي." "هيا بنا نضعها في سلة المهملات."

"I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle."

قال الجد: "لدي فكرة أفضل." "دعنا نكتب رسالة في زجاجة."

"What's a message in a bottle?"

"ما الرسالة التي في الزجاجة؟"

"You write a message on a piece of paper, fold the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find."

"تكتب رسالة على قطعة من الورق، ثم تطوي الورقة وتضعها في الزجاجة، ثم ترمي الزجاجة في البحر ليجدها شخص آخر."

Back at the house, Granddad washed the glass bottle and gave Tom a pen and a piece of paper. Tom was writing his message when Grandma came in the room.

عند عودته إلى المنزل، قام الجد بغسل الزجاجة وأعطى توم قلمًا وقطعة من الورق. كان توم يكتب رسالته عندما دخلت الجدة إلى الغرفة.

"What are you doing, Tom?" asked Grandma.

سألت الجدة "ماذا تفعل يا توم؟"

"I'm writing a message in a bottle," answered Tom. "Do you want to read it?"

أجاب توم: "أنا أكتب رسالة في زجاجة." "هل تريد قراءتها؟"

Hello!

My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA.

My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue.

What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me!

My email address is tom@beachnet.usa

From Tom



The next day, Tom and his grandparents went to the beach to throw the bottle into the sea.

وفي اليوم التالي، ذهب توم وأجداده إلى الشاطئ لإلقاء الزجاجة في البحر.

Many years passed, and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message....

مرت سنوات عديدة، وكبر توم. لقد نسي هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة في الزجاجة. وفي أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة....

### - Listen and read again. Make notes about the beginning of the story.

1. The characters are .....
2. The setting is .....
3. The first important event is .....



## Lesson (2)

### - Read the start of another story.

My friend Ali and I **were playing** in the forest yesterday. It **was** a lovely afternoon and the sun **was shining**. We **were** near my home, and we **were hoping** to see some interesting animals and birds. We **were walking** along the path when suddenly we **saw** a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I **was** a bit scared and **didn't want** to go, but I **followed** him. Near the house, there was ...

كنت أنا وصديقي علي نلعب في الغابة بالأمس. لقد كانت فترة ما بعد الظهر جميلة وكانت الشمس مشرقة. كنا بالقرب من منزلي، وكنا نأمل أن نرى بعض الحيوانات والطيور المثيرة للاهتمام. كنا نسير على طول الطريق عندما رأينا فجأة منزلاً صغيراً من بعيد. قال علي: "هيا بنا نذهب وننظر إلى المنزل". كنت خائفاً بعض الشيء ولم أرغب في الذهاب، لكنني تبعته. وبالقرب من المنزل كان هناك ....

### - Write a beginning of another story about **finding something on a beach**. Before you write, make notes to answer the questions.

1. Which beach were you on?.....
2. What time of day was it?.....
3. Who were you with?.....
4. What was the weather like?.....
5. What were you doing?.....
6. What did you find?.....

### - Use your notes to write the beginning of your story.

Yesterday, I was on the beach near my house. It was morning and it was sunny. I was walking with my friend when we .....

### - Work in pairs. Role play an interview.

Where were you?  
I was on the beach near my house.

What were you doing?  
We were swimming.

What was the weather like?  
It was sunny.



# Language

## The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

### Usage الاستخدام

- We use **the past continuous** in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past.

نستخدم الماضي المستمر في القصص لنقول ما كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

e.g. Yesterday afternoon, John **was walking** his dog.

### Form التكوين

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **was** + (v + ing).  
You / We / They / اسم جمع + **were**

- I **was doing** my homework yesterday evening.
- We **were playing** computer games.

تذكر

- عندما ينتهي الفعل بحرف ال (e) غير منطوق (قبله حرف ساكن) تحذف (e) قبل إضافة (ing).

ride → riding

arrive → arriv**ing**

- إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرف متحرك نضاعف الحرف الساكن الأخير قبل إضافة (ing) (بشرط أن يكون الفعل مكون من مقطع واحد).

get → get**ting**

swim → swim**ming**

### Negative النفي

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **wasn't** + (v + ing).  
You / We / They / اسم جمع + **weren't**

- He **was not watching** TV.
- They **weren't riding** their bikes.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

was **not** → wasn't

were **not** → weren't



## Lesson (2)

### Question السؤال

#### Yes/No question

Was + I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد + (v + ing)?  
Were + you / we / they / اسم جمع

- Was Ali swimming? - Yes, he was. - No, he wasn't.
- Were they surfing? - Yes, they were. - No, they weren't.

#### Wh- question

Q.W + was + I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد + (v + ing)?  
Q.W + were + you / we / they / اسم جمع

- What was she doing? - She was eating.
- What were they doing? - They were playing on the beach.

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

at 5 yesterday	في الساعة الخامسة أمس	yesterday evening	مساء أمس
yesterday morning	صباح أمس	when	عندما

- We can also use the **past continuous** with **when** and the **past simple** to show when one action interrupted another in the past:

يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضي المستمر مع الرابط **when** والماضي البسيط لبيان أن حدث ما قطع حدث آخر في الماضي:

When + ماضي مستمر , ماضي بسيط

e.g. When we saw a little house, we were walking along the path.

ماضي بسيط + when + ماضي مستمر

- I was watching TV when you called me.

### 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Yesterday morning, Ali ..... his homework.  
a) does      b) was doing      c) did      d) doing
2. They were ..... a story.  
a) read      b) reads      c) reading      d) to reading



3. I was eating when the phone .....  
a) ring                      b) rings                      c) rang                      d) ringing
4. .... you looking at your phone when I saw you?  
a) Was                      b) Is                      c) Were                      d) Are
5. Fatin ..... playing computer games.  
a) was                      b) were                      c) does                      d) did
6. Dad was reading a newspaper when Lina .....  
a) come                      b) comes                      c) was coming                      d) came

## 2

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. Hamza ..... (were) watching a football match.
2. Ayman was ..... (ride) his bike.
3. Hani was doing his homework ..... (where) he got a text message.
4. Hend and I ..... (play) when her father arrived.
5. Aya ..... (not watch) TV when I called her.
6. Ali was driving his car when his phone ..... (ring).
7. Sami ..... (were) walking with his friend.
8. What were you ..... (do)?
9. I was ..... (walk) along the path.
10. Ali and I ..... (was) playing in the forest.
11. .... (What) I met my friend, I was walking in the garden.
12. What was he ..... (did) when you visited him?
13. I ..... (weren't) watching TV when you called me.
14. We ..... (are) eating lunch in the restaurant at noon yesterday.
15. Aya was doing her homework when she ..... (gets) a text message from Heba.



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Tom is ..... years old.  
a) ten                      b) eleven                      c) nine                      d) twelve
2. He is from the .....  
a) Egypt                      b) France                      c) Chine                      d) USA
3. His favorite things are ....., animals and the color blue.  
a) space                      b) plants                      c) clothes                      d) birds
4. His email ..... is tom@beachnet.usa.  
a) title                      b) name                      c) address                      d) nickname

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. I get a text ..... from my friend.  
a) message                      b) ring                      c) call                      d) tone
2. The bottle is made of ..... It's easy to break.  
a) stone                      b) wood                      c) glass                      d) cloth
3. They loved water sports. They ..... and swam.  
a) surfed                      b) kicked                      c) jumped                      d) served
4. I write the message on a piece ..... paper.  
a) in                      b) on                      c) at                      d) of
5. They ..... the bottle out to sea for someone else to find.  
a) get                      b) throw                      c) read                      d) teach
6. Let's ..... it in the trash.  
a) put                      b) puts                      c) putting                      d) was putting

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

walking - hoping - shining - see

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was 1) ..... We were near my home, and we were 2) ..... to see some interesting animals and birds. We were 3) ..... along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him.



4

**Read the text then answer the questions.**

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. "Look, Granddad," he said. "Let's put it in the trash." "I have a better idea," said Granddad. "Let's write a message in a bottle." "What's a message in a bottle?" Tom asked "You write a message on a piece of paper, fold the paper, and put it in the bottle, then throw the bottle out to sea for someone else to find." Granddad replied.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The beach near their house was ..... and beautiful.  
a) bad                      b) noisy                      c) quiet                      d) ugly
- The underlined word "near" is opposite to .....  
a) small                      b) far                      c) big                      d) tall

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What was Tom doing when he saw a glass bottle in the water? .....
- What was the bottle made of? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

5

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- was - I - Yesterday - playing - football - afternoon, - .  
.....
- Ali - morning - yesterday - What - doing - was - ?  
.....
- lived - Tom's - sea - by - the - parents - .  
.....
- was - a newspaper - Dad - Lina - when - came - reading - .  
.....
- TV - I - when - you - wasn't - me - called - watching - .  
.....



## Lesson (2)

6

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. The weather was ..... (rain) yesterday morning.
2. The sun ..... (were) shining.
3. .... (Was) you playing computer games yesterday morning?
4. I was reading a book when my mom ..... (arrive).
5. Hady was ..... (watch) a football match when Egypt scored a goal.
6. Was Hend looking at her phone ..... (what) you saw her in the street?
7. They ..... (listen) to music when the man shouted.
8. You were studying for the exam when the car ..... (stop) outside.
9. They were drawing squares when their friends .. (come) to talk to them.
10. I ..... (work) when my friend sent me a message.
11. A: Were you drinking juice? B: Yes, I ..... (were) .
12. .... (Were) she making a sandwich?
13. The dogs ..... (wasn't) sleeping in the garden.
14. What were you ..... (do) yesterday morning?
15. When I ..... (comes) back from school, Mom was cooking.

7

Punctuate the following.

1. which beach were you on
2. they were playing football yesterday evening

8

Write a text of **FIFTY (50)** words about:

**Finding something on a beach**

Guiding elements:

- Which beach were you on?
- What time of day was it?

.....

.....

.....

.....



# Lesson (3)

# THE BOY WHO CRIED WOLF

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



sheep

أغنام



shepherd

راعي الغنم



villager

قروي



wolf

ذئب

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

main character	شخصية رئيسية	angry	غضبان	untrue	كاذب / غير صحيح
real	حقيقي	lonely	يشعر بالوحدة	idea	فكرة
sorry	حزين	bored	شاعر بالملل	fun	متعة - مرح
mini	نعناع	hill	تل	truth	حقيقة
joke	نكتة	recipe	وصفة	scared	خائف

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	P.P	Present	Past	P.P
annoy	يضايق	annoyed	waste	يضيع - يبدد	wasted
cry	يصرخ / يبكي	cried	rest	يستريح	rested
shout	يصرخ	shouted	believe	يصدق	believed
plan	يخطط	planned	save	ينقلد	saved
tell	يخبر	told	eat	يأكل	eaten

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

at the end	في النهاية	on your own	بمفردك
many times	عدة مرات	tell the truth	يقول الحقيقة
waste time	يهدر الوقت - يضيع الوقت	It's fun to + inf.	من الممتع أن ...
angry with	غاضب من		



## Listen to the story:

Once, there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village. He worked alone as a shepherd looking after sheep.

Every day, he took the sheep up the hill and rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass.



كان هناك صبي اسمه بيتر يعيش في إحدى القرى. كان يعمل بمفرده راعياً يعتني بالأغنام، كان يأخذ الخراف كل يوم إلى أعلى التل ويستريح بينما تأكل الخراف العشب اللذيذ.

One day, Peter was lying on the grass watching his sheep. He felt lonely and bored and decided to have some fun. First, he shouted, "Wolf! There's a wolf!" to the villagers in the field below: Next, he lay down and waited. The villagers were busy working, but they were worried about Peter's sheep, so they put down their tools and ran to save them.

في أحد الأيام، كان بيتر مستلقياً على العشب يراقب خرافه. لقد شعر بالوحدة والملل وقرر الاستمتاع ببعض المرح. أولاً، صرخ قائلاً: «ذئب»! يوجد ذئب إلى القرويين في الحقل الأسفل: بعد ذلك استلقى وانتظر، كان القرويون منشغلين بالعمل، لكنهم كانوا قلقين بشأن خراف بيتر، لذا تركوا أدواتهم وركضوا لإنقاذهم.

They reached the top of the hill, hot and tired. They saw Peter. He was lying under a tree and he was laughing. There is no wolf! It was a joke!" he said. The villagers were very angry and said, "Peter, you must tell the truth! After that, they left Peter and went back to work.

وصلوا إلى قمة التل وهم يشعرون بالحر والتعب. لقد رأوا بيتر مستلقياً تحت شجرة وكان يضحك قائلاً «لا يوجد ذئب! لقد كانت مزحة». فغضب القرويون بشدة وقالوا: «بيتر، يجب أن تقول الحقيقة، وبعد ذلك تركوا بيتر وعادوا إلى العمل.

Then. Peter did the same thing again later that week. The villagers were very angry, "Peter, you mustn't waste our time! We're very busy!" they said.

ثم فعل بيتر نفس الشيء مرة أخرى في وقت لاحق من ذلك الأسبوع. كان القرويون غاضبين للغاية، قالوا: «بيتر، لا يجب أن تضيع وقتنا نحن مشغولون للغاية!»

Finally, on the last day of the week, Peter was with his sheep at the top of the hill when suddenly a real wolf appeared. Peter was very scared and climbed a tree. He called and called for someone to help him, but no one arrived. The wolf killed and ate the sheep.

Peter understood why no one came, and he was very sorry.

وأخيراً، في اليوم الأخير من الأسبوع، كان بيتر مع أغنامه على قمة التل عندما ظهر فجأة ذئب حقيقي كان بيتر خائفاً جداً وتسلق شجرة. أخذ ينادي أحداً لمساعدته لكن لم يصل أحد. فقتل الذئب الخراف وأكلها. فهم بيتر لماذا لم يأت أحد، وكان يشعر بالأسف الشديد.



## Sequencing adverbs

## ظروف التسلسل

We use sequencing adverbs to say when things happen. They help us to understand the order of events. This makes the text easier to follow.

نستخدم ظروف التسلسل لنقول متى تحدث الأشياء. فهي تساعدنا في فهم ترتيب الأحداث. وهذا يجعل النص أسهل للمتابعة.

First أولاً    Next التالي    Then ثم    After that بعد ذلك    Finally أخيراً / في النهاية

## The Boy Who Cried Wolf

- Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea.
- **First**, he shouted "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep.
- **Next**, he said there was no wolf and it was a joke.
- **Then**, Peter did it again.
- **After that**, the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time.
- **Finally**, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

## Notes to help you to write a story using sequencing adverbs.

- **First**, plan your story, and decide what it will be about.  
أولاً، خطط لقصبتك، وقرر ما الذي ستتناوله.
- **Next**, write a first draft of your story.  
بعد ذلك، اكتب المسودة الأولى لقصبتك.
- **After that**, check and correct your spelling and grammar.  
بعد ذلك، قم بالتدقيق والتصحيح الإملائي والنحوي.
- **Finally**, share it with friends and enjoy!  
وأخيراً، قم بمشاركتها مع الأصدقاء واستمتع!

## Choose the correct words to complete the recipe.

## Salatet Zabadee

1. (**First / Then**) ..... , take a cucumber and cut it in pieces.
2. (**Next / Finally**) ..... , mix the yogurt and mint in a bowl.
3. (**After that / First**) ..... , add some garlic and salt if you like.
4. (**Next / Finally**) ..... , take it to the table for everyone to enjoy!



## Lesson (3)

# P PRONUNCIATION

Listen and repeat

استمع وردد.

/w/ sound

water

ماء



walk

يمشي



wolf

ذئب



west

غرب



wave

موجة



whisper

يهمس



whale

حوت



white

أبيض



- Complete the words with **w** or **wh**. Listen, check and repeat.

1) \_\_\_ arm

2) \_\_\_ alk

3) \_\_\_ at

4) \_\_\_ ave

5) \_\_\_ ere

6) \_\_\_ est

- Listen, read, and repeat the sentences:

1. A **white** **whale** **went** **west**.

2. A **wolf** **whispered**, "**What? When?**"





# A stressed syllable

- It is a stressed part of a word. It is said more strongly than the rest of it.

المقطع المشدد هو جزء من كلمة يتم نطقه بشكل أقوى من باقي الكلمة.

- When a word has a **prefix**, the prefix usually **isn't** stressed.

عندما تحتوي الكلمة على بادئة، عادةً لا يتم التشديد على البادئة.

- If the base word has one syllable, the stress is on the **base** word.

إذا كانت الكلمة الأساسية تتكون من مقطع واحد يتم التشديد على أصل الكلمة.

- **Look and identify the stressed syllable.**

dislike

يكره

indoors

في الداخل

unhappy

غير سعيد

resend

يعيد إرسال

untidy

غير مرتب

disagree

لا يوافق - يعارض



dislike → Why do you dislike surfing?



indoors → I like playing indoors.

unhappy → He was unhappy.

resend → Let's resend the message.



replay → Please replay the video.

incorrect → This answer is incorrect.

1 + 1 = 3



disagree → Why do you disagree with him?

untidy → The room is untidy.





# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. There was once a boy who looked after some .....  
a) cows                      b) sheep                      c) goats                      d) donkeys
2. The boy was .....  
a) bored                      b) excited                      c) happy                      d) clever
3. One day, he played a trick on the .....  
a) students                      b) tourists                      c) visitors                      d) villagers
4. The villagers came up the hill to ..... the sheep.  
a) eat                      b) look after                      c) save                      d) carry

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The main ..... in the story was a bit boring. I didn't like him.  
a) moral                      b) character                      c) setting                      d) ending
2. My little brother always ..... me when he is bored.  
a) annoys                      b) reads                      c) eats                      d) drinks
3. If you tell untrue stories, no one will ..... you.  
a) hate                      b) eat                      c) believe                      d) work
4. ...., a real wolf came. It ate the sheep.  
a) First                      b) Next                      c) Then                      d) Finally
5. If you tell ..... stories, no one will believe you.  
a) true                      b) right                      c) untrue                      d) exact

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**Next - shouted - fun - wolf**

Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some 1) ..... He had an idea. First, he 2) ..... "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep. 3) ....., he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. Then, Peter did it again. After that, the villager were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.



#### 4 Read the text then answer the questions.

Once there was a boy called Peter who lived in a village. He worked as a shepherd, looking after sheep. Every day he took the sheep up the hill and rested while the sheep ate the delicious grass.

One day, he felt bored. He decided to have some fun with the villagers. "Wolf! Wolf!" he shouted. The villagers came up to the hill to save the sheep. There was no wolf. He laughed at them. "Peter, you must tell the truth!" said the villagers. Peter made up the same untrue story again and again. The villagers were angry and told him it's bad to tell untrue stories. They went back to the village. Later that day, a real wolf came. The boy shouted but no one came to help. The wolf ate all the sheep. The boy felt sorry.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

The general idea of the text is about .....

a game                      a story                      a book                      leaflet

Peter's job is to look after .....

children                      student's                      sheep                      ducks

**B) Answer the following questions.**

Why were the villagers angry? .....

Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

What is the moral of the story? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order.**  
the villagers - Why - the - boy - annoy - did - ?

and - bored - Peter - lonely - was - .

#### 6 Write a text of FIFTY 50 words.

**How to make salatet zabadee**

**Guiding elements:**

(mix - yogurt)



# WRITING: THE ENDING OF A STORY PROJECT

## Vocabulary

الكلمات

reply	رد / يرد	coast	ساحل	boat	قارب
weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع	sailing	الإبحار	excited	متحمس
France	فرنسا	favorite	مفضل	later	فيما بعد
woman	إمرأة	things	أشياء	plane	طائرة

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
travel	يسافر traveled	traveled
enjoy	يستمتع بـ enjoyed	enjoyed
pass	يمر passed	passed
laugh	يضحك laughed	laughed
decide to	يقرر أن decided to	decided to

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
send	يرسل sent	sent
find	يجد found	found
mean	يعني meant	meant
grow up	يكبر grew up	grown up
come	يأتي came	come
feel	يشعر felt	felt

## Important expressions and prepositions : تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

read about	يقرأ عن	come into	يدخل
travel over	يسافر لأكثر من	That's a great idea!	هذه فكرة رائعة!
Le's + inf.	هيا بنا	with best wishes	مع أطيب التمنيات
welcome to	مرحبًا بك في	a long way	طريق طويل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## - Read this ending of the story:

Many years passed and Tom grew up. He and his grandparents forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was working when Granddad sent him a message.

مرت سنوات عديدة وكبر توم. لقد نسي هو وأجداده الرسالة الموجودة في الزجاجية. وفي أحد الأيام، كان توم يعمل عندما أرسل له جده رسالة.

Tom, you won't believe it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle!

توم، لن تصدق ذلك! لدينا رد على رسالتنا في زجاجة!

That weekend, Tom went to his grandparents' house.

"A man in France found the message," said Granddad. "Look, here is his reply."

في نهاية هذا الأسبوع، ذهب توم إلى منزل أجداده.

قال جدي: "عثر رجل في فرنسا على الرسالة". "انظر، ها هو رده."

From : Hugo

R

To : Tom

Hello Tom,

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green.

You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!

With best wishes,

Hugo

مرحباً توم،

اسمي هوجو وأعيش في بياريتز، فرنسا. أعيش على الساحل وأحب الإبحار بقاربي. في الأسبوع الماضي، كنت أبحر عندما رأيت شيئاً ما في الماء - رسالتك في زجاجة! وهذا يعني أنها سافرت أكثر من 6000 كيلومتر. لقد استمتعت بالقراءة عن الأشياء المفضلة لديك.

أشياء المفضلة هي القارب والمango واللون الأخضر. أنت مرحب بك جداً لزيارتي في فرنسا يوماً ما!

مع أطيب التمنيات،

هوجو



## Lessons (4 & 5)

Tom was very excited. "Wow, our message traveled a really long way!" Later that evening, Tom was writing something when Granddad came into the room.

"What are you doing, Tom?"

"I'm writing to Hugo."

"Why, are you going to visit him?"

"You and I are both going to visit him!"

"That's a great idea," laughed Granddad. "But it's a long way, so let's go by plane!"

كان توم متحمسًا جدًا. "رائع، لقد قطعت رسالتنا طريقًا طويلًا جدًا!" في وقت لاحق من ذلك المساء، كان توم يكتب شيئًا ما عندما دخل جده الغرفة.

"ماذا تفعل يا توم؟"

"أنا أكتب إلى هوجو."

"لماذا، هل ستزوره؟"

"أنا وأنت سنزوره!"

ضحك الجد: "إنها فكرة رائعة." "ولكن الطريق طويل، لذلك دعنا نذهب بالطائرة!"

## A good ending



**Tip!**

A good ending tells you what happens to the characters and how they feel at the end of the story.

تخبرك النهاية الجيدة بما يحدث للشخصيات وما يشعرون به في نهاية القصة.

**- Write another ending to the story.**

**R**

From : .....

To : **Tom** .....

Hello Tom,

My name is ..... and I live in .....

Last week, I was ..... when .....

I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are .....

Tom felt ..... Then he and Granddad decided to .....



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1

Hugo lives in Biarritz, .....  
 France Egypt China d) USA  
 Hugo loves ..... his boat.  
 driving riding carrying d) sailing  
 Hugo saw something in the .....  
 sky land water d) ground  
 The message in a bottle traveled over ..... kilometers.  
 6 6,000 600 d) 60

2

Many years ..... and Tom grew up.  
 passed traveled worked d) visited  
 Grandpa ..... me a message.  
 ran played took d) sent  
 Hugo sent a ..... to our message.  
 talk reply boat d) great  
 I enjoyed reading ..... interesting things.  
 in on about d) at  
 Our message traveled a really long .....  
 way away c) plane d) why

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**working - grandparents - believe - popular**

Many years passed and Tom grew up. He and his 1) .....  
 forgot about the message in a bottle. Then, one day, Tom was 2) .....  
 when Granddad sent him a message. Tom, you won't 3) .....  
 it! We have a reply to our message in a bottle! That weekend, Tom went  
 to his grandparents' house. "A man in France found the message," said  
 Granddad. "Look, here is his reply."



## Lessons (4 & 5)

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. Hugo - doing - What - when - he - the message - found - was - ?

2. was - yesterday - writing - Tom - a message - morning - .

3. to - I - to France - by - travel - decided - plane - .

4. you - Why - him - are - going - visit - to - ?

5. welcome - You - me - are - and - to come - visit - .

### 5 Punctuate the following.

1. my name's Ali and I live in egypt.

2. how did they find the message

### 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

#### A short story

Guiding elements:

(characters - main events)



# Writing Corner

## A beginning of a story

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him. Near the house, there was ...

## The boy who cried "Wolf"

Peter was lonely and bored. He wanted some fun. He had an idea. First, he shouted "Wolf"! and the villagers came to help and save the sheep. Next he said there was no wolf and it was a joke. Then, Peter did it again. After that, the villagers were very angry and said he shouldn't waste their time. Finally, a real wolf came. It ate the sheep. Peter was very sorry.

## A reply to a message

**R** From : Hugo  
To : Tom

Hello Tom,

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers. I enjoyed reading about your favorite things. My favorite things are my boat, mangoes, and the color green. You are very welcome to come and visit me in France one day!

With best wishes,  
Hugo



# Review on Unit (9)

## Vocabulary

setting	المكان والزمان	message	رسالة	reply	يرد / رد
moral	مغزى - الدرس المستفاد	surf	يركب الأمواج	story	قصة
narrator	راوي	grandparents	الأجداد	bottle	زجاجة
ending	خاتمة - نهاية	sheep	أغنام	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
beginning	بداية	shepherd	راعي	villager	قروي
characters	الشخصيات	coast	ساحل	boat	قارب
events	أحداث	sailing	الإبحار	excited	متحمس
review	مقال نقدي	favorite	مفضل	later	فيما بعد
man	رجل	things	أشياء	plane	طائرة
journey	رحلة	work	يعمل	travel	يسافر

## Pronunciation

### /w/ sound

water	ماء	walk	يمشي
wolf	ذئب	whisper	يهمس
wave	موجة	write	أبيض
west	غرب	whale	حوت

## Language

### The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

- نستخدم الماضي المستمر ليدل على شئ كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

e.g. Yesterday afternoon, John **was walking** his dog.

- يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضي المستمر لبيان أن حدثًا ما قطع حدثًا آخر.

ماضي بسيط + **when** + ماضي مستمر

e.g. I **was reading** a book **when** my dad **came** home.

### Sequencing adverbs

ظروف التسلسل

First أولاً    Next التالي    Then ثم    After that بعد ذلك    Finally أخيرًا



# Dictation on Unit (9)

## Lesson (1)

.....	المكان والزمان	.....	راوي
.....	الشخصيات	.....	مغزى - الدرس المُستفاد
.....	خاتمة - نهاية	.....	قصة
.....	يعمل	.....	يمر

## Lesson (2)

.....	رسالة	.....	يركب الأمواج
.....	الأجداد	.....	بداية
.....	زجاجة	.....	حدث مهم
.....	يعيش	.....	طقس

## Lesson (3)

.....	أغنام	.....	راعي
.....	قروي	.....	ذئب
.....	شخصية رئيسية	.....	غضبان
.....	يضايق	.....	يصرخ

## Lessons (4 & 5)

.....	رد	.....	ساحل
.....	قارب	.....	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
.....	الإبحار	.....	متحمس
.....	مفضل	.....	فيما بعد
.....	رجل	.....	أشياء
.....	يستمتع	.....	يقرر أن



# Activities on Unit (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

1

Yesterday, I was on the .....

beach

road

ship

garden

It was .....

windy

sunny

rainy

cloudy

I was walking with my .....

brother

sister

mother

friend

We saw a big .....

shark

jellyfish

whale

starfish

2

The ..... of the story is that kindness is everything.

moral

character

ending

narrator

The ..... is the person who tells you the story.

character

setting

narrator

moral

In the ....., we find out why the man was sad.

narrator

ending

setting

character

3

**surf - beach - sea - games**

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The 1) ..... near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, 2) ..... and played games on the sand. One day they were swimming in the 3) ..... when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water. His Granddad said, "Let's write a message in a bottle."

4

I'm Ali. I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey.

Help your child deal with such questions.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعامل مع مثل هذه الأسئلة.



When the boy rides the donkey, the people they pass say he should let his father ride. When the man rides the donkey, they say that he should let his son have a turn. Then, they say the donkey must be tired. So, in the ending of the story, they both carry the donkey!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Ali is writing a ..... of one of Goha's stories.  
a) note                      b) review                      c) comment                      d) post
- The setting of this story is the .....  
a) market                      b) zoo                      c) countryside                      d) park

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- Who are the characters of this story? .....
- What's the moral of the story? .....
- What did they do in the end of the story? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- and - a cucumber - First, - cut - take - in - it - pieces - .  
.....

- you - Why - do - surfing - dislike - ?  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- He ..... (play) the piano when his mom arrived home.
- We were travelling to the city when Grandpa ..... (call) us.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

- a white whale went west
- we went on a boat trip on water

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**A short story**

**Guiding elements:**

- The characters
- Main events



# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

**differences - narrator - funny - review - popular**

- Mom : What are you doing, Lama?
- Lama : I'm writing a 1) ..... of one of Goha's stories.
- Mom : His stories are 2) ....., aren't they?
- Lama : Yes, he is a great 3) ....., too.
- Mom : His stories are 4) ..... all over the world.
- Lama : Are the stories the same in every country?
- Mom : There are some 5) .....



## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

**sunny - were - beach - weather - playing**

- Hoda : Where were you?
- Shahd : I was on the 1) .....
- Hoda : What 2) ..... you doing?
- Shahd : I was 3) ..... with my friends.
- Hoda : What was the 4) ..... like?
- Shahd : It was 5) .....

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |            |         |         |         |         |
|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. Morocco | Cairo   | Algeria | Sudan   | (.....) |
| 2. writing | playing | riding  | travel  | (.....) |
| 3. read    | grandma | grandpa | father  | (.....) |
| 4. called  | played  | watch   | arrived | (.....) |
| 5. Which   | What    | Where   | Was     | (.....) |



## Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |              |          |         |         |         |
|--------------|----------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. first     | next     | then    | cried   | (.....) |
| 2. donkey    | man      | son     | woman   | (.....) |
| 3. wolf      | sheep    | cow     | annoy   | (.....) |
| 4. angry     | worked   | bored   | tired   | (.....) |
| 5. listening | studying | shouted | playing | (.....) |



# Review (3)

## - Listen and read.

Nadia went to the shops with her friends. They bought some clothes, some jewelry, and some snacks. Then, they passed a toy shop. In the window of the toy shop was a cuddly toy. "Oh, look!" said Nadia. "Last time I came here, I was with my sister. She loved this cuddly toy. I'm going to buy it for her".



ذهبت نادية إلى المتاجر مع صديقاتها. اشتروا بعض الملابس وبعض المجوهرات وبعض الوجبات الخفيفة، ثم مروا بمتجر لعب وكان في فاترينة العرض دمية محشوة «أوه. انظروا. قالت نادية آخر مرة أتيت فيها إلى هنا، كنت مع أختي. لقد أحببت هذه اللعبة. أنا سوف اشتريها لها.

Last summer, I moved to a big, busy city. I really missed the countryside. Then, one afternoon, I was walking through the middle of the city when I found a beautiful park. I spent the rest of the day there, among the trees and the flowers. I still miss the countryside sometimes, but I go to the park every day.



It's my favorite place in the whole city!

في الصيف الماضي، انتقلت إلى مدينة كبيرة مزدحمة، لقد اشتقت إلى الريف حقاً، ثم بعد ظهر أحد الأيام، كنت أسير في وسط المدينة عندما وجدت حديقة جميلة، قضيت بقية اليوم هناك، بين الأشجار والزهور. ما زلت أفتقد الريف أحياناً، لكنني أذهب إلى الحديقة كل يوم، إنه مكاني المفضل في المدينة بأكملها!

One day, a little monkey was feeling bored. He climbed to the top of the tallest tree and looked around. Nearby, some other little monkeys were playing a game. "Come and play with us!" they shouted. But the little monkey felt shy. Slowly, he went closer. And slowly, he felt braver. Before long, the little monkey felt happy. It was good to have fun!



في أحد الأيام، كان قرد صغير يشعر بالملل. صعد إلى قمة أطول شجرة ونظر حوله، في مكان قريب، كانت بعض القردة الصغيرة الأخرى تلعب لعبة. صاحبت القردة «تعال والعب معنا». لكن القرد الصغير شعر بالخجل. اقترب ببطء، وببطء شعر بشجاعة، قبل فترة طويلة، شعر القرد الصغير بالسعادة، كان من الجيد أن يحظى ببعض المتعة.

When I was a boy, I liked to go to the beach with my grandfather. We used his metal detector to find interesting things in the sand. One time, we found a small, metal box. "Treasure!" I said. My grandfather laughed. "Go on, then," he said. "What's inside?" I opened the box. Inside, there was a very special kind of treasure. It was a letter. A very old letter ...



عندما كنت صبياً، كنت أحب الذهاب إلى الشاطئ مع جدي. استخدمنا كاشف المعادن الخاص به للعثور على أشياء مثيرة للاهتمام في الرمال. ذات مرة وجدنا صندوقاً معدنياً صغيراً. قلتُ «كنزاً». ضحك جدي. قال: «استمر، إذن». «ماذا يوجد بداخله؟» فتحت الصندوق. في الداخل، كان هناك نوع خاص جداً من الكنز. لقد كانت رسالة. رسالة قديمة جداً...



# Activities on Review (3)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Playing is ..... for us in lots of different ways.  
a) bad                      b) good                      c) harmful                      d) sad
2. When we play, we feel .....  
a) happy                      b) sad                      c) bad                      d) angry
3. We also ..... about the world and ourselves.  
a) write                      b) read                      c) learn                      d) teach
4. When we play, we learn to solve .....  
a) homework                      b) stories                      c) puzzles                      d) problems

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A hot, dry climate can help to ..... old artifacts.  
a) damage                      b) preserve                      c) beat                      d) learn
2. Who is your favorite ..... in this story?  
a) character                      b) setting                      c) ending                      d) event
3. I like playing video games with my brother, but he usually ..... me.  
a) beats                      b) drinks                      c) built                      d) boats

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

when - were - playing - First

One day, Fares and Ramy were 1)..... hopscotch in the school yard. They 2)..... drawing squares using different colored chalk 3)..... their friend Magdy came to talk to them. "What are you playing?" asked Magdy. "It's hopscotch!" said Fares. "Do you want to play?" "How do you play it?" asked Magdy. "It's very easy," said Ramy.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting artifacts to see. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of animal statues. The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their culture.



First, we saw different statues in gold and silver. Then we saw some in clay, stone, and granite, too. My favorite was a small snake made of metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were lots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- My brother liked a gold ..... with blue glass eyes.  
a) parrot      b) eagle      c) falcon      d) snake
- The underlined pronoun "They" refers to .....  
a) statues      b) cats      c) Ancient Egyptians      d) animals

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What did they see? .....
- Where did they go? .....
- Summarize the first paragraph. ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- toy - buys - Nadia - a cuddly - for - sister - her - .  
.....
- are - Artifacts - and - both - jewelry - objects - .  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- We ..... (walk) when we found a room.
- I stopped ..... (play) board games.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

- the park is in the middle of a city
- what are you doing, tom?

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Our museum visit**

**Guiding elements:** - Where did you go? - When did you go?



# Unit 10

## Free as a bird

### In this unit, the students will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about bird and animal proverbs.
- listen to and understand a presentation about eco-tourism in Egypt.
- read and learn about eco-tourism and wildlife.
- use **must** / **mustn't** to talk about something we have to do.
- use the first conditional to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.
- read advertisements for eco-tourism vacations in Egypt.
- read and learn about bird migration.
- say words with two or three syllables.
- read and write a blog about animal habitats.
- create an information leaflet about the Nile Delta.



# Lesson (1)

# BIRDS OF A FEATHER

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

successful	ناجح	real	حقيقي	sensible	عاقل / حكيم
proverb	قول مأثور	similar	متشابه	careful	حريص

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

flock	يتجمع / سرب	group	مجموعة	chickens	دجاج
plan	خطة	strange	غريب	true	حقيقي
worm	دودة	scary	مخيف	nest	عش
eagle	نسر	exact	دقيق	scientific	علمي
feathers	ريش	dare	يواجه بشجاعة - يجرؤ	description	وصف

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
succeed	ينجح	succeeded
flock	يتجمع	flocked
stay	يقيم / يمكث	stayed
mention	يذكر	mentioned
count	يعد	counted
hatch	يفقس	hatched
happen	يحدث	happened
dare	يجرؤ	dared

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
mean	يعني / يقصد	meant
tell	يخبر	told
catch	يصطاد / يمسك	caught
say	يقول	said
fly	يطير	flew
sing	يغني	sung
understand	يفهم	understood



## Lesson (1)

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

well-known	مشهور / معروف	How <b>about</b> ...?	وماذا عن...؟
well done!	أحسن!	You're getting the idea.	انت تفهم الفكرة.
try hard	يحاول بجد	make mistakes	يرتكب أخطاء

### Definitions

تعريفات

<b>sensible</b>	If something is <b>sensible</b> , it is a good idea that someone has thought about carefully.	معقول - منطقي
<b>successful</b>	Someone who is <b>successful</b> tries to do something, and does it.	ناجح
<b>careful</b>	A <b>careful</b> person tries hard not to make mistakes.	حريص
<b>similar</b>	When two things are <b>similar</b> , they might look the same or do the same things.	متشابه
<b>real</b>	If something is <b>real</b> , it happens and is true.	حقيقي

### Proverbs

أقوال مأثورة

- A **proverb** is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true.  
القول المأثور هو عبارة مشهورة حول شيء يكون صحيحًا بشكل عام.
- A **proverb** has another meaning as well as its exact meaning.  
القول المأثور له معنى آخر علاوة على معناه الفعلي.

### Study the following proverbs

- "The early bird catches the worm".  
من يستيقظ مبكرًا للعمل لديه فرصة أكبر للنجاح. "البركة في البكور".
- "Birds of a feather flock together".  
الأشخاص المتشابهون يفعلون أشياء متشابهة. "الطيور على أشكالها تقع".
- "Don't count your chickens before they hatch".  
لا تضع خططًا لشيء قبل حدوثه. "لا تعد فراخك قبل أن تفقس من البيض".
- "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly".  
الطائر الذي يجرؤ على مواجهة الأخطار هو من يتعلم الطيران. "من جدّ وجدّ ومن زرع حصد." / "من يريد النجاح لا يهب المخاطر".
- "Even an eagle will not fly higher than the sun".  
حتى النسر لا يمكنه الطيران أعلى من الشمس. "العين لا تعلق على الحاجب".
- "Singing birds don't build nests".  
الطيور المغردة لا تبني أعشاشًا. "الأعمال أعلى صوتًا من الأقوال." أي من يتكلم كثيرًا لا يعمل.
- "It is not only fine feathers which make fine birds".  
ليس الريش الناعم فقط هو من يصنع الطيور الجيدة. "المظاهر خداعة / لا تحكم على الناس بالمظاهر".



## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

**Maiak :** Injy, what does this proverb mean? "The early bird catches the worm."

إنجي، ماذا يعني هذا المثل؟ "الطائر الذي جاء مبكراً يلتقط الدودة."

**Injy :** Well, proverbs have more than one meaning. This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be **successful**, you need to be the first to do something.

حسناً، الأمثال لها أكثر من معنى. يخبرنا هذا المثل أن الطائر الذي يكون مبكراً، أو أول من يحاول اصطياد الدودة، عادة ما يصطادها. لذلك، فهذا يعني أيضاً أن تكون ناجحاً يجب أن تكون الأول في فعل هذا الشيء.

**Malak :** How about this one? "Birds of a feather flock together".

وماذا عن هذا المثل؟ "الطيور ذات الريش المتشابه تتجمع سوياً".

**Injy :** If they flock together, that means they stay in a large group. And maybe it mentions feathers because they all have similar feathers.

إذا تجمعوا معاً، فهذا يعني أنهم يبقون في مجموعة كبيرة. وربما يذكر الريش لأن جميعها لها ريش متشابه.

**Malak :** You mean they all look the same?

هل تقصد أنهم جميعاً يبدوون نفس الشيء؟

**Injy :** Yes. But here, it means that similar people like doing the same things.

نعم. ولكن هنا يعني أن الأشخاص المتشابهين يحبون القيام بنفس الأشياء.

**Malak :** Okay, here's a strange one! "Don't count your chickens before they hatch."

حسناً، هذا مثل غريب! "لا تعدوا فراخكم قبل أن تفقس من البيض."

**Injy :** Well, you might have four eggs in a nest, but you don't really know how many will become chickens. So maybe it's about being **careful** before you know something will happen.

حسناً، قد يكون لديك أربع بيضات في العش، لكنك لا تعرف حقاً عدد الفراخ التي ستصبح دجاجاً. لذلك ربما يتعلق الأمر بالحدس قبل أن تعرف أن شيئاً ما سيحدث.

**Malak :** So you don't make too many plans before something is **real**. That's **sensible**. How about this proverb? "The bird who dares to fall is the bird who learns to fly." Do you think that means you have to try something that seems scary if you want to succeed?

لذلك لا تضع الكثير من الخطط قبل أن يصبح الأمر حقيقياً. هذا معقول. ماذا عن هذا المثل؟ "الطائر الذي يجرؤ على السقوط هو الطائر الذي يتعلم الطيران." هل تعتقد أن هذا يعني أنه عليك تجربة شيء يبدو مخيفاً إذا كنت تريد النجاح؟

**Injy :** Yes, I do. Well done, Malak! You're getting the idea!

نعم. أحسنت يا ملك! لقد فهمت الفكرة!



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The early ..... catches the worm.  
a) bird      b) animal      c) bee      d) falcon
2. Proverbs have more than ..... meaning(s).  
a) four      b) three      c) two      d) one
3. The proverb also means that to be ....., you need to be the first to do something.  
a) noisy      b) lazy      c) successful      d) careless
4. Finally proverbs ..... us a lot of things.  
a) do      b) teach      c) learn      d) say

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Birds of a feather ..... together.  
a) run      b) flock      c) talk      d) swim
2. Don't count your chickens before they .....  
a) eat      b) drink      c) watch      d) hatch
3. The early bird ..... the worm.  
a) sells      b) buys      c) makes      d) catches
4. Even an eagle will not fly higher than the .....  
a) sun      b) tree      c) flower      d) plant
5. Singing birds don't build .....  
a) castles      b) nests      c) houses      d) clubs
6. If something is ....., it is a good idea that someone has thought about carefully.  
a) sensible      b) bad      c) dangerous      d) busy



7. Someone who is ..... tries to do something, and does it.  
a) excited      b) dangerous      c) real      d) successful
8. A ..... person tries hard not to make mistakes.  
a) careless      b) careful      c) sad      d) well-known
9. When two things are ..... , they might look the same or do the same things.  
a) different      b) fast      c) similar      d) slow
10. If something is ..... , it happens and is true.  
a) real      b) unreal      c) false      d) wrong

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

different - feathers - group - similar

"Birds of feather flock together". That means they stay in a large

- 1) ..... And maybe it mentions 2) ..... because they all have 3) ..... feathers. So they all look the same.

### 4 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. might - eggs - You - four - have - nest - a - in - .

2. have - one - Proverbs - than - meaning - more - .

3. together - Birds - a feather - of - flock - .

4. bird - early - The - catches - worm - the - .

### 5 Punctuate the following.

1. how about this one
2. the early bird catches the worm



## Lesson (2)

# ECO-TOURISM IN EGYPT

### Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	sustainable	مستدام (ملائم للبيئة)
ideal	مثالي	respect	يحترم
simple accommodation	وسائل إقامة بسيطة	camp	يقيم معسكر / يخيم - يعسكر
coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية	protected area	منطقة محمية

### Activities

أنشطة

hiking	التنزه سيرًا على الأقدام	snorkeling	الغطس بأنبوب تنفس
watching movies	مشاهدة الأفلام	taking photos	التقاط الصور
going to restaurants	الذهاب إلى المطاعم	watching animals	مشاهدة الحيوانات
visiting beaches	زيارة الشواطئ	cooking outdoors	الطهي بالخارج
traveling on a river	التنقل عبر النهر	taking photos underwater	التقاط الصور تحت الماء
bird watching	مشاهدة الطيور	watching wildlife	مشاهدة الحياة البرية

### Places

أماكن

North Africa	شمال أفريقيا	Asia	آسيا
Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة	Europe	أوروبا

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

amazing	مذهل	journey	رحلة	lizards	سحالي
historical	تاريخي	species	فصائل / أنواع	turtles	سلاحف بحرية
stores	محلات	habitat	موطن / بيئة	crocodiles	تماسيح
guidebook	دليل سياحي	perfect	مثالي	tent	خيمة
mountains	جبال	excellent	ممتاز	tour	جولة
traditional	تقليدي	modern	حديث	trip	رحلة قصيرة
nature	الطبيعة	environment	البيئة	quiet	هادئ
pollution	تلوث	trash	قمامة	vacation	إجازة



## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.P
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
cause	يسبب	caused	caused
sail	يبحر	sailed	sailed
fly	يطير	flew	flown
hurt	يؤذي	hurt	hurt

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

warmer weather	طقس أكثر دفئًا	close to	قريب من
very long distance	مسافة طويلة جدًا	fly away	يطير بعيدًا
migrating water birds	هجرة الطيور المائية	at certain times	في أوقات محددة
from a safe distance	من مسافة آمنة	the sun went down	غربت الشمس
set off	ينطلق / يبدأ رحلة	under the stars	تحت النجوم (في الهواء الطلق)
bright-colored fish	أسماك ذات ألوان زاهية	a busy day	يوم حافل
underwater photography			التصوير الفوتوغرافي تحت الماء

## Definitions

تعريفات

sustainable	do something in a way that doesn't damage the environment.	مستدام / ملائم للبيئة
accommodation	living in a place where you have what you need, and nothing more.	سكن / أماكن إقامة
respect	like something and want to look after it.	يحترم
ideal	perfect or excellent	مثالي

**Note:** A guidebook gives tourists information about a place.

الدليل السياحي يعطي السياح معلومات عن مكان.

## Activities and places

أنشطة وأماكن

Activities		Places	
Snorkeling	الغطس بأنبوب تنفس وقناع	the Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
Safari	رحلات السفاري	the desert	الصحراء
Sailing	الإبحار	the Nile	النيل
Bird-watching	مشاهدة الطيور	Siwa Oasis	واحة سيوة



## Listen and read. Eco-tourism in Egypt.

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.



مصر بلد رائعة. هناك العديد من الأماكن التاريخية للزيارة، وكذلك المتاجر والأسواق والمتاحف. يمكن للناس أن يذهبوا للغطس في البحر الأحمر، أو الذهاب في رحلة سفاري صحراوية، أو تسلق الجبال، أو الإبحار في النيل. لذا، فإن السياحة مهمة - لكن السياحة البيئية أصبحت تحظى بشعبية كبيرة أيضًا.

Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more **sustainable** than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in **simple accommodation**, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

السياحة البيئية هي وسيلة سفر لا تضر بالبيئة. إنها أكثر استدامة وملائمة من السياحة التقليدية، وهي مصممة لحماية الطبيعة. يقيم الناس في أماكن إقامة بسيطة، وليس في فنادق كبيرة، ويجب ألا يسافروا بطرق تسبب الكثير من التلوث.

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate – they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.

بدأ الكثير من الناس بزيارة مصر لمشاهدة الحياة البرية والطيور. هناك الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام التي يمكنك رؤيتها هنا. أنواع كثيرة من الطيور تهاجر - يجب عليهم التنقل إلى بلدان مختلفة في أوقات معينة من السنة، للعثور على الطعام، أو بناء أعشاش، أو التمتع بطقس أكثر دفئًا. وفي كثير من الأحيان يجب أن تطير الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وكثير من رحلاتها تمر فوق مصر، لأنها تقع في شمال أفريقيا وقريبة من آسيا وأوروبا.

There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.



يوجد في مصر أكثر من ٤٥٠ نوعاً من الطيور، ويأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم في إجازات لرؤيتها. على سبيل المثال، واحة سيوة مكان رائع لرؤية العديد من الطيور المائية المهاجرة. إنه موطن مهم ويجب على الناس حمايته.

People who go bird watching in Egypt will have a lot to see. They mustn't get too close to the birds, because they might fly away, but they can watch from a safe distance and take lots of photographs!

الأشخاص الذين يذهبون لمشاهدة الطيور في مصر سيكون لديهم الكثير لرؤيته. ويجب ألا يقتربوا كثيرًا من الطيور، لأنهم قد يطيرون بعيدًا، لكن يمكنهم مشاهدة من مسافة آمنة والتقاط الكثير من الصور!

Wildlife watching is **ideal** for people who **respect** nature, and eco-tourism is a good way for people to do this.

تعتبر مشاهدة الحياة البرية مثالية للأشخاص الذين يحترمون الطبيعة، وتعد السياحة البيئية وسيلة جيدة للأشخاص للقيام بذلك.





**1- On the river:** Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!

مرحباً، أنا نادية. في الشهر القادم، سنقوم بجولة لرؤية الطيور والحيوانات التي تعيش بالقرب من الماء. سنسافر بطول النهر في قوارب صغيرة، والتخييم في الخيام ليلاً. سنحضر كاميراتنا، لأننا سنرى بعض الأشياء المذهلة. نأمل أن نرى السحالي والسلاحف، بالإضافة إلى الكثير من النباتات المثيرة للاهتمام. ومع ذلك، يجب ألا نسبح لأنه قد يكون هناك تماسيح!

**2- Desert sunsets:** Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting this place with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down - more animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

مرحباً، أنا آدم. أحب زيارة هذا المكان مع عائلتي. لقد ذهبنا العام الماضي، وفي المساء، شاهدنا الكثير من الحياة البرية عندما غابت الشمس - يعيش عدد أكبر من الحيوانات على الرمال أكثر مما قد تعتقد. هذا العام سنبقى في الخارج ونطبخ وجبات الطعام تحت النجوم (في الهواء الطلق)، لذلك يجب علينا إحضار خيمة. ثم سنسير في مجموعات صغيرة لرؤية الحياة البرية من حولنا.

**3- Snorkel safari:** Hi, I'm Lara. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs. The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

مرحباً، أنا لارا. سيكون لدينا فرصة للقيام ببعض التصوير تحت الماء في إجازتنا! سننطلق في جولة من الشاطئ بالقوارب الصغيرة، والإبحار إلى الأماكن حيث يمكننا رؤية العديد من أنواع الأسماك المختلفة. هناك أيضاً أسماك جميلة ذات ألوان زاهية وكذلك الشعاب المرجانية. الجولة فقط يومي الاثنين والأربعاء لأن هذه منطقة محمية، لذا يجب ألا يكون هناك الكثير من الرحلات.

**4- Birds at sea:** Hi, I'm Fares. Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'll visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day. We're definitely going to bring our cameras! We must bring our own lunches too, as there are no shops there.

مرحباً، أنا فارس. في الأسبوع القادم، سنذهب في جولة لنرى بعض الطيور الجميلة. سنقوم بزيارة الشواطئ الهادئة في حافلة صغيرة، لنرى الأنواع المختلفة التي يمكننا رؤيتها. يعد البحر في هذه المنطقة مكاناً محبوباً جداً للطيور للعثور على الطعام، لذلك سيكون يوماً حافلاً. نحن ذاهبون بالتأكيد لجلب الكاميرات! يجب علينا إحضار وجبات الغداء الخاصة بنا أيضاً، لأنه لا يوجد متاجر هناك.



# L language

(must / mustn't)

يجب أن / يجب ألا

Form التكوين

Subject + must / mustn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We **must** respect nature.  
We **mustn't** leave trash in the desert.

Usage الاستخدام

- We use "**must**" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do.  
نستخدم "must" عند الحديث عن شيء يجب أن نقوم به أو من المهم أن نقوم به.

e.g. We **must** bring a tent.

- We use "**mustn't**" when we are not allowed to do something.  
نستخدم "mustn't" عندما يكون غير مسموح لنا القيام بشيء ما.

e.g. We **mustn't** swim because there might be crocodiles!

Study the following.

We'll travel to the oasis to see the water birds.

سنسافر إلى الواحة لرؤية الطيور المائية.

You **mustn't** scare the birds. You **must** study them quietly from a safe place.

يجب ألا تخيف الطيور. يجب عليك دراستها بهدوء من مكان آمن.



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- You ..... (**mustn't**) respect nature.
- You mustn't ..... (**scare**) birds or animals.
- You ..... (**must**) leave trash in the desert.
- You must ..... (**is**) careful in the natural environment.
- You ..... (**mustn't**) walk to school today because there are no buses.
- You ..... (**must**) walk in the desert when it's hot.
- You must ..... (**studies**) hard.
- Students ..... (**mustn't**) follow the school rules.
- You ..... (**must**) throw trash on the beach.
- We ..... (**mustn't**) drink much water. It's healthy.



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- I love visiting the desert with my .....  
a) family      b) friends      c) neighbors      d) classmates
- We saw lots of wildlife when the ..... went down.  
a) moon      b) sun      c) star      d) earth
- More ..... live on the sand than you might think.  
a) insects      b) birds      c) animals      d) plants
- This year we'll stay outside and ..... meals under the stars.  
a) buy      b) sell      c) bake      d) cook

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Eco-tourism is more ..... than traditional tourism.  
a) dangerous      b) normal      c) sustainable      d) local
- In eco-tourism people stay in simple .....  
a) accommodation      b) pollution      c) vacation      d) mountain
- Wildlife watching is ideal for people who ..... nature.  
a) hate      b) respect      c) damage      d) destroy
- We go ..... under water.  
a) hiking      b) sleeping      c) migrating      d) snorkeling
- She likes ..... photos.  
a) taking      b) walking      c) going      d) talking
- On eco-tourism vacations, you see ..... and animals.  
a) big cities      b) nature      c) hotels      d) movies
- On eco-tourism vacations you stay in ..... places.  
a) big      b) modern      c) short      d) simple
- On eco-tourism vacations, people think about .....  
a) the environment      b) shopping      c) cooking      d) running
- On eco-tourism vacations, the most important thing is not to ..... nature.  
a) see      b) protect      c) respect      d) hurt
- You can ..... mountains or sail on the Nile.  
a) go      b) climb      c) damage      d) travel



## Lesson (2)

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

much - birds - beaches - many

Next week, we're going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. We'll visit quiet 1) ..... on a small bus, to see how 2) ..... different kinds we can see. The sea in this area is very popular place for 3) ..... to find food, so it will be a busy day.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The main idea of the text is ..... in Egypt.  
a) eco-tourism      b) museums      c) markets      d) deserts
- People can go snorkeling in the .....  
a) Red Sea      b) Lake      c) River      d) Pool

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- What is eco-tourism? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
- What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to? .....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- is - ideal - Wildlife - watching - people - for - respect - who - nature - .  
.....
- study - birds - from - You - must - place - a safe - .  
.....



3. going - We - on - are - month - a tour - next - .
- .....

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You mustn't ..... (swimming) because there might be crocodiles.
2. You ..... (must) drop trash on the beach.
3. When we go camping, we ..... (mustn't) take a tent.
4. You ..... (must) throw litter in the park.
5. You ..... (must) scare the birds.
6. Many kinds of birds migrate. They ..... (mustn't) fly to different countries.
7. In the zoo, people ..... (must) get too close to animals.
8. We ..... (mustn't) be careful in the nature environment.
9. Ali ..... (must) speak loudly in the library.
10. We must ..... (is) on time.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

1. you mustn't scare the birds  
.....
2. It s important to respect nature  
.....

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Eco-tourism in Egypt**

**Guiding elements:**

(sustainable - simple accommodation)

.....

.....

.....



## Lesson (3) Part (A)

# THE BENEFITS OF ECO-TOURISM

### Vocabulary

الكلمات

traditional	تقليدي	eco-tourist	سائح بيئي	presentation	عرض تقديمي
damage	تلف / ضرر	hotel	فندق	score	النتيجة
campsite	مخيم	deadline	موعد نهائي	cycling	ركوب الدراجات
thirsty	عطشان	points	نقاط	snack	وجبة خفيفة

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
cause	يسبب	caused	caused
create	يبتكر	created	created
miss	يفتقد / يفوته	missed	missed
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored

#### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
drink	يشرب	drank	drunk

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

by bus	بالأتوبيس	for two hours	لمدة ساعتين
outdoor hotel	فندق بالخارج	take care	يحترس - يعتني
do activities	يقوم بأنشطة	eco-friendly accommodation	وسائل إقامة صديقة للبيئة
local people	السكان المحليون	keen to....	متحمس أن ...
try out	يقوم بتجربة	when ever possible	إذا أمكن
provide jobs	يوفر وظائف	good for you!	مفيد لك!
do sports	يمارس رياضة	go sightseeing	يُشاهد المعالم



## Listen to Lina's presentation about eco-tourism.

My presentation today is about eco-tourism and why it is a good idea. Egypt is a very beautiful country, so we must look after it. However, lots of people want to visit Egypt because it is a very interesting place.



عرض اليوم يدور حول السياحة البيئية وسبب كونها فكرة جيدة. مصر بلد جميل جدا، لذا يجب أن تعني به، ومع ذلك، يرغب الكثير من الناس في زيارة مصر لأنها مكان مثير للاهتمام للغاية.

It is good if we have lots of visitors, but tourism can sometimes mean too many big hotels and too much traffic. This can cause problems. Eco-tourism is good because people can visit and enjoy the environment but not in a way that damages the environment. These are my ideas about why I think eco-tourism is a good idea:

من الجيد أن يكون لدينا عدد كبير من الزوار، لكن السياحة قد تعني في بعض الأحيان وجود عدد كبير جدا من الفنادق الكبيرة وحركة مرور كبيرة جدا. هذا يمكن أن يسبب مشاكل. السياحة البيئية جيدة لأن الناس يمكنهم زيارة البيئة والاستمتاع بها ولكن ليس بطريقة تضر بالبيئة، هذه هي أفكارتي حول سبب اعتقادي أن السياحة البيئية فكرة جيدة:

If people learn more about the environment, they will want to protect it. If tourists take care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment. If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there won't be so many big hotels. If eco-tourism is successful, it will create new jobs for the local people. Thank you for listening. Are there any questions?

إذا تعلم الناس المزيد عن البيئة، فسوف يرغبون في حمايتها، إذا اهتم السائحون بالاماكن التي يزورونها، فإنهم سيتسببون في ضرر أقل للبيئة، إذا أقام السائحون في أماكن إقامة بسيطة وصديقة للبيئة، فلن يكون هناك الكثير من الفنادق الكبيرة، إذا نجحت السياحة البيئية، فإنها ستخلق فرص عمل جديدة للسكان المحليين. شكرا على استماعكم، هل هناك أية أسئلة؟



# Language

## (If) First Conditional

"إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

### Form التكوين

**If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf.) ...**

e.g. If people **learn** more about the environment, they **will want** to protect it.

**Subject + will + inf. + if + present simple**

e.g. I **will buy** a car **if** I **have** a lot of money.

### Usage الاستخدام

- We use **the first conditional** to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

e.g. If tourists **stay** in simple accommodation, there **won't be** so many big hotels.

### Note:

لاحظ الآتي:

**will = 'll      will not = won't**

e.g. If I **am** hungry, I'**ll** **eat** a snack.

If he **doesn't leave** now, he **won't catch** the bus.

وضع ( , ) قبل بداية الجملة الثانية في حالة وجود **if** في البداية.

e.g. If she **feel** thirsty, she **will** drink some water.

### - Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- If I ..... (**has**) an exam, I'**ll** study for it.
- If you go to bed late, you ..... (**get**) up late.
- If Omar ..... (**play**) football for two hours, he'**ll** be tired.
- If she feels thirsty, she ..... (**drink**) some water.
- If we ..... (**not work**) together, we'**ll** miss the deadline.
- If I ..... (**be**) hungry, I'**ll** eat a snack.
- He ..... (**catch**) the bus if he goes to the station early.
- If he ..... (**be**) free, he'**ll** visit us.
- She'**ll** buy a new phone if she ..... (**have**) a lot of money.
- He ..... (**not visit**) us if he is busy.
- If she ..... (**got**) up early, she'**ll** catch the bus.
- If you study hard, you'**ll** ..... (**passing**) the exam.



## Lesson (3) Part (B)

# CLIL: SCIENCE BIRD MIGRATION

### Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية



kingfisher  
طائر الرفراف



pelican  
بجعة



swift  
طائر السنونو / السمامة



eagle  
نسر

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

migrate	يهاجر	flamingo	طائر الفلامنجو	Fayoum	الفيوم
northern	شمالي	across	عَبْرَ	distances	مسافات
winter	شتاء	journey	رحلة طويلة	oasis /oases	واحة / واحات
stars	نجوم	scientists	علماء	continent	قارة

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past		P.P
seem	يبدو	seemed		seemed
leave	يفادر	left		left
eat	يأكل	ate		eaten
find out	يكتشف	found out		found out
spend	يقضي وقتاً	spent		spent

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

European countries	دول أوروبية	warmer places	أماكن أكثر دفئاً
on the way	على الطريق	The Red Sea	البحر الأحمر
such as	مثل	Lake Qarun	بحيرة قارون
flocks of birds	أسراب من الطيور	Mediterranean Coasts	سواحل البحر المتوسط



## Listen and read.

## Bird Migration

استمع واقرأ.

## A long journey

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.



تهاجر العديد من الطيور من وإلى مصر، وعبرها، بسبب مكانها في العالم. شمال أفريقيا أكثر حرارة من أوروبا، لذلك في فصل الشتاء، تغادر العديد من الطيور بلدان شمال أوروبا وتطير إلى مصر وغيرها من الأماكن الأكثر دفئًا. وهذا يعني أن الكثير من الطيور المثيرة للاهتمام تهاجر إلى مصر، مثل النسور والصقور وطيور السمامة.

Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

تهاجر العديد من الطيور المائية إلى مصر أيضًا. يمكنك في كثير من الأحيان رؤية أسراب كبيرة من الطيور مثل البجع بالقرب من المياه، على طول سواحل البحر الأحمر والبحر الأبيض المتوسط، وكذلك على نهر النيل. غالبًا ما تأكل هذه الطيور الأسماك أو النباتات التي تعيش في الأنهار والبحيرات والواحات والبحار. تعد بحيرة قارون بالفيوم مكانًا جيدًا لمشاهدة طيور الفلامنجو.

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way.

Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

تطير بعض الطيور لمسافات طويلة جدًا، وتقوم بنفس الرحلة سنة بعد سنة. حتى الطيور الصغيرة التي تهاجر لأول مرة يبدو أنها تعرف كيفية الوصول إلى المكان الذي تحتاج إليه. كيف تعرف هذه الطيور إلى أين تذهب؟ قد يستخدمون الشمس أو النجوم أو الأشياء التي يمكنهم رؤيتها في الطريق. لقد أمضى العلماء وقتًا طويلًا في محاولة معرفة كيفية القيام بذلك!



## PRONUNCIATION

**A syllable المقطع**

It is a part of a word that contains a single vowel sound.

المقطع اللفظي هو جزء من كلمة ما يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد.

**Stress:** The way in which a part of a word is emphasized more than the other parts while speaking.

النبرة أو الشدة: الطريقة التي يتم بها التأكيد على نطق جزء من الكلمة أكثر من الأجزاء الأخرى أثناء التحدث.

☘ Most two syllable words have the stress on the first syllable.

معظم الكلمات ذات المقطعين يكون المقطع الأول مشددًا.

weather

careful

Three syllable words can have the stress on the **first** or the **second** syllable.

الكلمات ذات الثلاثة مقاطع من الممكن أن يكون التشديد على المقطع الأول أو الثاني.

successful

snorkeling

● tourism

important

## Two syllables



falcon



eagle



Egypt

## Three syllables



flamingo



pelican



kingfisher



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Some birds fly very ..... distances, making the same journey.  
a) long                      b) short                      c) small                      d) new
2. Even ..... birds know how to get to the place they need to be.  
a) old                      b) young                      c) modern                      d) little
3. Birds might use the ..... or the stars to know where to go.  
a) planet                      b) moon                      c) sun                      d) son
4. .... have spent a long time trying to find out how the birds do this!  
a) Teachers                      b) Doctors                      c) Scientists                      d) Footballers

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Many birds migrate to find ..... weather in winter.  
a) bad                      b) colder                      c) warmer                      d) snowy
2. There are often large ..... of water birds near lakes and oases.  
a) flocks                      b) rocks                      c) clocks                      d) socks
3. Migrating birds fly very ..... distances.  
a) simple                      b) short                      c) long                      d) tiny
4. Birds might use the sun or the ..... to find out where to go.  
a) earth                      b) stars                      c) ground                      d) floor
5. Lots of birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles and .....  
a) monkeys                      b) elephants                      c) lions                      d) swifts
6. Many birds ..... to and from Egypt every year.  
a) sleep                      b) migrate                      c) eat                      d) hatches



### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fish - flocks - rivers - hurt

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can see large 1) ..... of birds such as pelicans near water. These birds eat 2) ..... or plants that live in the 3) ....., lakes, oases and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too. You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The underlined pronoun "it" refers to .....  
 a) Egypt      b) Africa      c) Europe      d) Fayoum
- Europe is ..... than North Africa.  
 a) colder      b) warmer      c) hotter      d) wetter

#### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What do often birds eat?

.....

4. What's the main idea of the passage?

.....

5. Where can you see flamingos?

.....



### Lesson (3)

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. in - snorkeling - We - go - hot - weather - .  
.....
2. fly - very - birds - Some - distances - long - .  
.....
3. important - Tourism - Egypt - very - is - in - .  
.....

#### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. If she ..... (feel) hungry, she'll have a snack.
2. If you don't sleep early, you ..... (not get) up early.
3. If tourists ..... (takes) care of the places they visit, they will cause less damage to the environment.
4. If people learn more about the environment, they ..... (want) to protect it.
5. If tourists stay in simple, eco-friendly accommodation, there ..... (not be) so many big hotels.
6. If eco-tourism ..... (be) successful, it will create new jobs for the local people.

#### 7 Punctuate the following.

1. what do migrating birds eat
2. If I'm hungry I'll have a snack

#### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Bird migration**

Guiding elements:

(migrate - North Africa)



# Lessons (4 & 5)

# WRITING: A BLOG PROJECT

## Vocabulary

الكلمات

blog	مدونة	problem	مشكلة	area	منطقة
important	هام	snorkel	يغطس بأنبوب تنفس وقناع	sharks	أسماك القرش
healthy	صحي	scuba dive	يغوص تحت الماء	safe	آمن
rivers	أنهار	floods	فيضانات	fires	حرائق
insects	حشرات	planet	كوكب	drought	جفاف

## Animal Habitats

مواطن وبيئات الحيوانات

forests	الغابات	the mountains	الجبال	the rivers	الأنهار
the desert	الصحراء	the seas	البحار		

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

for example	على سبيل المثال	cut down trees	يقطع الأشجار
good for	مفيد لـ	clean up	ينظف
famous for	مشهور بـ	many types of	أنواع عديدة من
great for	رائع لـ	garden box	حوض زراعة النباتات
look after	يعتني بـ	a lot of space	مساحة كبيرة
make sure	يتأكد	all over the world	في جميع أنحاء العالم
waste water	يهدر المياه	Sinai Peninsula	شبه جزيرة سيناء
recycle paper	يعيد تدوير الورق	The Ras Mohammed National Park	محمية رأس محمد الوطنية

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
waste	يهدر - يبدد	wasted	wasted
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
plant	يزرع	planted	planted
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled	recycled
drop	يُسقط	dropped	dropped
try	يحاول	tried	tried



## What's a habitat

Hello, I'm Arwa – welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important.

مرحبًا، أنا أروى – مرحبًا بكم في مدونتي! أكتب اليوم عن شيء أعتقد أنه مهم جدًا.

I think we should all try to protect animal habitats.

Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.



أعتقد أنه ينبغي أن نحاول جميعًا حماية البيئات الحيوانية. تحتاج الحيوانات إلى أماكن آمنة للعيش فيها، والعثور على الطعام، ورعاية صغارها. إنهم جزء من كوكبنا، لذا يجب علينا التأكد من أن الأشياء التي نقوم بها لا تؤذيهم.

There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife-watching holidays. This is good for the country, and good for the people, too. When people learn about wildlife, they want to protect it.

هناك الكثير من البيئات المختلفة في مصر، مثل الصحراء والبحر والجبال والأنهار. إنه أمر جيد للجميع إذا قمنا بحماية هذه البيئات. على سبيل المثال، عندما يكون الموطن صحيًا، يمكن للعديد من الحيوانات أن تعيش في مكان واحد. ومع السياحة البيئية الجيدة، يمكن للناس القدوم لقضاء إجازات لمشاهدة الحياة البرية. وهذا أمر جيد لبلدنا، وجيد للناس أيضًا. عندما يتعلم الناس عن الحياة البرية، فهم يريدون حمايتها.

We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects. You don't need a lot of space – here's a garden box I made for my window!



يمكننا جميعًا التفكير في الأشياء التي يمكننا القيام بها لحماية هذه البيئات. على سبيل المثال، يجب ألا نهدر الماء أو نلقي القمامة. يمكننا إعادة تدوير الورق، حتى لا يقطع الناس الأشجار. يمكننا أيضًا زراعة الزهور والنباتات، لأنها مفيدة للطيور والحشرات. أنت لا تحتاج إلى مساحة كبيرة - إليك حوض النباتات الذي صنعتة لنا فديتي!

**Note:** A habitat is a place where an animal or plant lives.

البيئة أو الموطن هو المكان الذي يعيش فيه الحيوان أو النبات.



## Read and learn: Causes and effects

Causes	أسباب	Effects	تأثيرات (النتائج)
There are floods, droughts or fires.	يوجد فيضانات أو جفاف أو حرائق.	Animals habitats are damaged.	يلحق الضرر بمواطن الحيوانات.
Animal habitats are damaged.	إلحاق الضرر بمواطن الحيوانات.	Animals don't have safe places to live, find food, or look after babies.	لا تجد الحيوانات أماكن آمنة للحياة ولا تجد طعام ولا تستطيع العناية بصغارها.
A habitat is safe and healthy.	الموطن آمن وصحي.	Lots of animals can live there.	يمكن للكثير من الحيوانات العيش فيه.
We recycle paper.	نقوم بإعادة تدوير الورق.	Trees aren't cut down.	لا يتم قطع الأشجار.
We grow plants and flowers.	نقوم بزراعة النباتات والزهور.	Birds and insects have food.	يمكن للطيور والحشرات إيجاد الطعام.

## Study the following

and (و) تفيد العطف

We saw turtles, pelicans and lizards when we went wildlife watching.

but (لكن) تفيد التناقض

This was a beautiful river, but there is pollution in it now.

because (لأن) لبيان السبب

We wanted to clean up the beach because there was trash on it.

so (لذلك) لبيان النتيجة

We planted flowers so birds and insects can have more food.

## When you write a blog about animal habitats, you write about:

عندما تكتب مدونة عن البيئات الحيوانية، يمكن أن تكتب عن:

- Which animals live there. أي الحيوانات تعيش في هذا الموطن.
- Which plants live there. أي النباتات تعيش في هذا الموطن.
- What problems this habitat has. ما هي المشاكل الموجودة بالموطن.
- How we can help it. كيف يمكننا مساعدة هذا الموطن.

كما يمكن أن نستخدم الروابط (and - but - so - because) لبيان الأسباب والتأثيرات و (must - mustn't) لبيان ما هو مهم.

Write a blog about the Nile habitat.





## Project

### Read the leaflet.

اقرأ المنشور.

#### The Ras Mohammed National Park

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.



تعد محمية رأس محمد الوطنية على البحر الأحمر منطقة رائعة يمكن للسكان

المحليين والسياح زيارتها. تشتهر هذه المنطقة الجميلة في شبه جزيرة سيناء بالحياة البحرية والمياه الدافئة والطقس المذهل. يأتي الناس من جميع أنحاء العالم للغوص والغوص هنا.

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching.

يمكنك رؤية الشعاب المرجانية والكثير من الأسماك ذات الألوان الزاهية، وربما أسماك القرش. هناك الكثير من الحيوانات البرية الأخرى أيضًا، وهي مكان رائع لمشاهدة الطيور.

The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

الحديقة الوطنية محمية، ولكن يُسمح للناس بزيارتها. ولأنها جميلة جدًا، يأتي الكثير من الزوار ويركبون القوارب، أو يسبحون ويغطسون في البحر.

### Creating a leaflet

عمل منشور أو كتيب

☀ When you write an information leaflet for visitors to a habitat, you can write about.

عند كتابة منشور إعلامي لزوار موطن ما، يمكنك الكتابة عن.

☀ where it is and what wildlife you can see there.

مكان الموطن وأي حياة برية يمكنك أن تراها هناك.

☀ why it is an important and interesting place.

لِمَ هذا المكان هام وشيق.

☀ add some pictures

أضف بعض الصور.

📁 Create a leaflet about the Nile Delta.

.....

.....

.....

.....



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ras Mohammed National ..... is on the Red Sea.  
a) Club      b) Shop      c) Store      d) Park
2. It's a fantastic area for locals and ..... to visit.  
a) scientists      b) farmers      c) tourists      d) doctors
3. This beautiful area is on the ..... Peninsula.  
a) Aswan      b) Sinai      c) Luxor      d) Siwa
4. People come from all over the world to ..... and scuba dive here.  
a) run      b) play      c) snorkel      d) swim

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We can plant flowers and plants to ..... animal habitats.  
a) help      b) waste      c) damage      d) hurt
2. Animals need safe places to find .....  
a) babies      b) food      c) air      d) metal
3. In Egypt, there are ..... types of habitats.  
a) many      b) much      c) one      d) no
4. People can go on wildlife ..... vacations.  
a) watching      b) changing      c) riding      d) waiting

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**run - watching - coral - fish**

In the Ras Mohammed National Park you can see 1) ..... reefs and lots of brightly colored 2) ..... and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird 3) ..... The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm writing today about something which I think is really important. I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do, don't hurt them. There are lots of different habitats in Egypt, such as the desert, sea, mountains, and rivers. It is good for everybody if we protect these habitats. For example, when a habitat is healthy, lots of animals can live in one place. With good eco-tourism, people can come on wildlife watching holidays.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- We should all try to protect animal .....  
a) food                      b) legs                      c) habits                      d) habitats
- Animals need ..... places to live in.  
a) safe                      b) unsafe                      c) small                      d) close

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- What are the habitats in Egypt? .....
- What does the underlined pronoun "them" refer to? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- drop - waste - We - mustn't - or - water - litter - .  
.....
- coral - the - in - You - Sea - can - Red - see - reefs - .  
.....

#### 6 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**A blog about the forest habitat**

#### Guiding elements:

- which animals live there

- which plants live there



# Writing Corner

## A famous proverb

A proverb is a well-known phrase about something which is generally true. It has another meaning as well as its exact meaning. "The early bird catches the worm". This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

## Eco-tourism in Egypt

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets and museums. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels. They mustn't travel in ways that cause pollution. They can visit Egypt for bird and wildlife watching.

## Bird migration

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts.

## A blog about animal habitats

[Home](#)

[Archive](#)

[Contact](#)

[Pages](#)

[Q](#) [I](#) [E](#) [I](#) [I](#)

Hello, I'm Sarah – welcome to my blog! I'm writing today about something which I think is really important. I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need safe places to live, find food, and look after their babies. They are part of our planet, so we must make sure that the things we do, don't hurt them or their habitats.



# Review on Unit (10)

## Vocabulary

successful	ناجح	camp	يقيم معسكر
similar	متشابه	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
real	حقيقي	protected area	منطقة محمية
sensible	عقل / حكيم	tourists	السياح
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	damage	يتلف / يضر
sustainable	مستدام (ملائم للبيئة)	pelican	بجعة
ideal	مثالي	kingfisher	طائر الرفراف
respect	يحترم	swift	طائر الستونو / السمامة
simple	بسيط	eagle	نسر
accommodation	أماكن إقامة / سكن	migrate	يهاجر
scuba dive	يغوص بأنبوب تنفس	close to	قريب من
wildlife	الحياة البرية	desert	صحراء
mountains	الجبال	forest	غابة
habitat	موطن - بيئة	space	مساحة فارغة

## Activities

hiking	التنزه سيرًا على الأقدام	visiting beaches	زيارة الشواطئ
snorkeling	الغطس بأنبوب التنفس	cooking outdoors	الطهي بالخارج
watching movies	مشاهدة الأفلام	traveling on a river	التنقل عبر النهر
taking photos	التقاط الصور	taking photos underwater	التقاط الصور تحت الماء
going to restaurants	الذهاب للمطاعم	wildlife-watching	مشاهدة الحياة البرية



## Pronunciation

## Two syllables

weather

falcon

careful

## Three syllables

flamingo

successful

pelican

## Grammar

## Necessity الضرورة والإلزام

يجب أن.. **المصدر** **inf.** + **must**

تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة لعمل شيء ما

e.g. You **must** protect the environment.يجب ألا.. **المصدر** **inf.** + **mustn't**

تستخدم للتعبير عن عدم السماح بعمل شيء ما.

e.g. You **mustn't** smoke here.

## (If) First Conditional

"إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

## Form التكوين

**If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf.) ...**e.g. **If** people **learn** more about the environment, they **will want** to protect it.

## Usage الاستخدام

- We use **the first conditional** to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

e.g. **If** tourists **stay** in simple accommodation, there **won't be** so many big hotels.



# Dictation on Unit (10)

## Lesson (1)

.....	ناجح	.....	حقيقي
.....	متشابه	.....	عاقل / حكيم
.....	حريص	.....	نسر

## Lesson (2)

.....	السياحة البيئية	.....	بسيط
.....	مستدام - ملائم للبيئة	.....	أماكن إقامة / سكن
.....	مثالي	.....	يحمي
.....	يحترم	.....	الشعاب المرجانية

## Lesson (3)

.....	بجعة	.....	يهاجر
.....	طائر الرفراف	.....	صقر
.....	طائر السنونو / السمامة	.....	طائر الفلامنجو

## Lessons (4 & 5)

.....	قريب من	.....	موطن - بيئة
.....	الصحراء	.....	شعاب مرجانية
.....	مدونة	.....	سبب
.....	الجبال	.....	تأثير
.....	الغابة	.....	الغوص تحت الماء



# Activities on Unit (10)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We mustn't waste ..... or drop litter.  
a) money      b) water      c) time      d) energy
2. We can recycle.....  
a) cans      b) papyrus      c) paper      d) glass
3. We can also plant .....  
a) oranges      b) tomatoes      c) potatoes      d) flowers
4. Plants and flowers are great for birds and .....  
a) insects      b) cows      c) monkeys      d) lions

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When people ..... the environment, they want to protect it.  
a) trip      b) respect      c) damage      d) hurt
2. Eco-tourism is more .... than vacations which don't care about the environment.  
a) sustainable      b) dangerous      c) expensive      d) similar
3. Many birds ..... to find warmer weather in Egypt.  
a) take      b) respect      c) migrate      d) save

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

meat - Nile - birds - plants

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can often see large flocks of 1) ..... such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the 2) ..... These birds often eat fish or 3) ..... that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for **its** sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.



## Activities

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching. The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The Ras Mohammed National ..... is on the Red Sea.  
a) Park                      b) Club                      c) Oasis                      d) Wild
2. You can see coral ..... and lots of fish there.  
a) roofs                      b) reefs                      c) birds                      d) stones

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What is the Sinai Peninsula famous for? .....
4. What does the underlined word "its" refer to? .....
5. What is the main idea of the text? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

1. we - protect - I - habitats - animal - should - think - .  
.....

2. fly - distances - long - Migrating - very - birds - .  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. We ..... (mustn't) respect nature when we go wildlife-watching.
2. If she ..... (learn) to bake, she'll save a lot of money.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. you mustn t smoke in hospitals. ....
2. what is eco-tourism .....

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Your favorite bird**

**Guiding elements:**

- What's the bird's name?
- What does it look like?



# Al-Azhar Corner

1

Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

Where - long - ostrich - wild - bird

- Sara : What's your favorite 1) .....?
- Salma: It's the 2) .....
- Sara : How 3) ..... is it?
- Salma: It's about 210 cm long.
- Sara : 4) ..... does it live?
- Salma: It lives in the 5) .....



Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

England - places - Welcome - come - Pyramids

- Amir : Hi! 1) ..... to Egypt.
- John : Hi! Thank you.
- Amir : Where do you 2) ..... from?
- John : I come from 3) .....
- Amir : What 4) ..... did you visit in Egypt?
- John : I visited the 5) ..... and the Sphinx.

2

Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |            |            |          |        |         |
|------------|------------|----------|--------|---------|
| 1. careful | successful | sensible | play   | (.....) |
| 2. big     | see        | small    | simple | (.....) |
| 3. read    | red        | white    | blue   | (.....) |
| 4. went    | saw        | took     | study  | (.....) |
| 5. and     | but        | play     | so     | (.....) |



Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |             |         |            |         |         |
|-------------|---------|------------|---------|---------|
| 1. desert   | sea     | mountain   | eat     | (.....) |
| 2. migrate  | pelican | kingfisher | swift   | (.....) |
| 3. watching | go      | taking     | hiking  | (.....) |
| 4. make     | grow    | come       | visited | (.....) |
| 5. habitat  | happy   | healthy    | safe    | (.....) |



# March Test

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ras Mohammed National Park is on the ..... Sea.  
a) Dead      b) Maditerranean      c) Red      d) Black
2. Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life and ..... weather.  
a) word      b) meaning      c) amazing      d) cold
3. People come from all over the world to ..... and scuba dive here.  
a) ski      b) snorkel      c) study      d) see
4. You can see ..... and lots of brightly colored fish.  
a) plants      b) trees      c) falcons      d) coral reefs

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. "Birds of a feather ..... together."  
a) sing      b) dare      c) hatch      d) flock
2. Before I buy the story, I read a ..... about it.  
a) movie      b) review      c) detail      d) note
3. My father is ..... He looks after sheep.  
a) doctor      b) teacher      c) shepherd      d) dentist

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

journey - countryside - image - donkey

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The story is about a man who goes to the market with his son and a 1) ..... The setting is the 2) ....., many years ago. Two of the characters - the man and his son - take turns riding the donkey because it's a long 3) .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of where it is in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too.



You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The text is about ".....".  
a) Reading      b) Bird migrating      c) Go shopping      d) Hiking
- Birds migrate in large .....  
a) cities      b) flocks      c) jobs      d) places

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What do water birds eat? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....
- Why do many birds fly to North Africa? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

- she - a book - Was - reading - ?  
.....
- mustn't - birds - scare - We - the - .  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- You must ..... (are) careful when you cross the road.
- He ..... (play) football at 6 pm yesterday.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

- tom's grandpa lives by the sea
- egypt is an amazing country

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

Guiding elements:

**Eco-tourism**

( important - environment )



# Unit 11

## How can I help?

### In this unit, the students will ...

- listen, read, research, and write about charity work and volunteering.
- use infinitives of purpose.
- read and understand three texts about mystery objects.
- listen to an interview about volunteering.
- use *-ly* and other adverbs.
- read and understand a story about two brothers.
- say words containing *sh*, *ch*, and *tch*.
- Write a biography of a volunteer.
- create a leaflet about being a good citizen.



# Lesson (1) WHY DO YOU WANT TO HELP?

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

donate	يتبرع	support	يساند / يدعم	volunteer	يتطوع
participate	يشارك	charities	جمعيات خيرية	vegetable garden	حديقة نباتية

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

organization	منظمة	neighbor	جار	vacation	أجازة
trash	قمامة	particular	خاص	kindergarten	حضانة / الروضة
project	مشروع	habitat	موطن	community help	مساعدة المجتمع

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

Present	Past	P.P	Present	Past	P.P
train يتدرب	train <sup>ed</sup>	train <sup>ed</sup>	support يدعم	support <sup>ed</sup>	support <sup>ed</sup>
donate يتبرع	donate <sup>d</sup>	donate <sup>d</sup>	participate يشارك	participate <sup>d</sup>	participate <sup>d</sup>
choose يختار	chose	chosen	volunteer يتطوع	volunteer <sup>ed</sup>	volunteer <sup>ed</sup>
grow يزرع	grew	grown			

## Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

take part in	يشارك في	start up	يبدأ
give away	يتبرع	look forward to	يتطلع إلى
an after-school club	نادي بعد المدرسة	kind to	عطوف مع
a bit nervous	متوتر قليلاً	used to	اعتاد أن
at first	في بادئ الأمر	look after	يعتني بـ
get better	يتحسن	look for	يبحث عن
help out	يساعد في	live alone	يعيش بمفرده

## Definitions

تعريفات

support	to do things that help a particular person or group	يساند / يدعم
participate	to take part in something	يشارك
volunteer	to do a job or activity and not take any money for it	يتطوع
donate	to give something away to help a person or organization	يتبرع



## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to **support** other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people **volunteered** to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.



I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love sports, so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children football skills. I was a bit nervous at first, but lots of children joined in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children **participating**.

I teach the class after school on Wednesdays. The class is for 45 minutes, and we train and play games. I like seeing the children get better at football, and it's really good fun, too.

مرحبًا، أنا تامر. في المدرسة، بدأنا مشروعًا يسمى مساعدة المجتمع. كان علينا جميعًا أن نختار شيئًا يمكننا القيام به لدعم الأشخاص أو الأشياء الأخرى في مجتمعنا. كان هناك الكثير من الأفكار. على سبيل المثال، أراد بعض الأشخاص إنشاء حديقة نباتية في المدرسة لزراعة الفواكه والخضروات الطازجة. كان ذلك محبوبًا جدًا. وتطوع أشخاص آخرون للمساعدة في تنظيف القمامة من النهر، حتى تكون مواطن الحيوانات أكثر أمانًا. قررت أنني أريد مساعدة الأطفال في مدرستي. أنا أحب الرياضة، لذلك أنشأت ناديًا بعد المدرسة لتعليم الأطفال الصغار مهارات كرة القدم. كنت متوترًا بعض الشيء في البداية، ولكن انضم الكثير من الأطفال وكان آباؤهم سعداء للغاية. وكان من الرائع أن يشارك هذا العدد الكبير من الأطفال. أقوم بتدريس الطلاب بعد المدرسة يوم الأربعاء. مدة الحصة 45 دقيقة، ونحن نتدرب ونلعب الألعاب. أحب رؤية الأطفال وهم يتحسنون في كرة القدم، وهو شيء ممتع جدًا.

• Answer the following:

1. Who did Tamer want to help? .....
2. What does Tamer like seeing? .....



## Listen and read about:

استمع واقرأ عن:

### Some more ideas for the Community Help Project.

#### Reem

I love reading, so I decided to **help out** in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We're **starting up** a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.



أحب القراءة، لذلك قررت أن أساعد الأطفال في صف رياض الأطفال يوم الخميس من خلال القراءة للأطفال. أحب قراءة القصص مع الأطفال الصغار، وهم يحبون ذلك أيضًا. نحن نبدأ مشروعًا حيث يفكرون في قصصهم الخاصة الأسبوع المقبل. أنا أتطلع إلى ذلك.

#### Ibrahim

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents **donated** lots of toys too. We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.



كانت أختي الصغيرة مريضة الشهر الماضي، وكانت في المستشفى. وهي الآن أفضل، ولكن عندما زرناها كانت حزينة لأنها لم تكن تحب أن تكون هناك. اعتقدت أنه سيكون من الجيد أن أفعل شيئًا للأطفال المرضى. لقد رسمت أنا وأصدقائي الكثير من الصور الكبيرة للزهور والحيوانات والشواطئ والأشجار. تبرع آباؤنا بالكثير من الألعاب أيضًا. أخذنا هذه الألعاب واللوحات إلى المستشفى لجعل الغرف تبدو أجمل.

#### Mariam

My neighbor has always **been kind to** us. She used to help my mom **look after** me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.



لقد كانت جاراتي دائمًا لطيفة معنا. كانت تساعد أمي في الاعتناء بي عندما كنت أصغر سنًا. لقد كبرت الآن قليلًا، وأصبح من الصعب عليها أحيانًا الذهاب للتسوق. لذلك أسألها عما تحتاجه، ثم أذهب إلى المتاجر وأحضره. أنا أحب مساعدتها.

### Answer the following:

1. What did Reem decide to do? .....
2. Why was Ibrahim's sister sad? .....
3. What did Mariam's neighbor use to do? .....



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My neighbor has always been ..... to us.  
a) clever      b) cruel      c) kind      d) bad
2. She used to help my ..... look after me.  
a) aunt      b) sister      c) uncle      d) mom
3. It's sometimes ..... for her to go shopping.  
a) easy      b) difficult      c) good      d) bad
4. I go to the ..... and get it. I like to help her.  
a) stores      b) schools      c) hospitals      d) clubs

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I think it's very important to be kind ..... animals.  
a) of      b) to      c) at      d) in
2. To give something away to help a person or organization means .....  
a) volunteer      b) support      c) participate      d) donate
3. My mom sometimes helps ..... at the school library.  
a) above      b) out      c) down      d) up
4. To take part in something means to .....  
a) donate      b) support      c) participate      d) volunteer
5. I looked ..... my neighbors' pet cat when they went on vacation.  
a) before      b) up      c) forward      d) after
6. .... means to do a job or activity and not take any money for it.  
a) Support      b) Volunteer      c) Donate      d) Participate
7. We decided to start ..... a local children's charity.  
a) up      b) down      c) on      d) at
8. I help my neighbor because she lives .....  
a) lonely      b) alone      c) away      d) nervous
9. I'm looking ..... to my holiday.  
a) after      b) forward      c) for      d) up
10. She lost her pen. She looked ..... it everywhere.  
a) at      b) in      c) to      d) for
11. When I was young, I ..... to help my neighbor.  
a) use      b) used      c) ran      d) did
12. I look after my little brother ..... I like to help my mom.  
a) so      b) because      c) that      d) to



3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

books - donate - starting up - help out

I love reading very much. I have lots of 1) ..... at home. I decided to 2) ..... in the kindergarten class by reading to the children. We're 3) ..... a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

4

Read the following text then answer the questions.

Last week, my friends started a project called Community Help. They wanted to choose something they could do to support people and things in their community. Some of them wanted to start a vegetable garden in their area to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. Other friends volunteered to help clean the trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer. I decided to help children in my school. I started an after-school club to teach them football skills. It was great to have so many children participating.

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Some of my friends wanted to start a vegetable .....  
a) market      b) garden      c) fair      d) place
- I decided to help children in my .....  
a) club      b) centre      c) school      d) fun fair

B) Answer the following questions.

- What is the main idea of the passage? .....
- What does the underlined word "them" refer to? .....
- What did your friends want to do? .....

5

Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- reading - children - I - the younger - stories - with - love - .  
.....
- neighbor - alone - I - lives - because - help - she - my - .  
.....

6

Punctuate the following.

- i want to help children in my school .....



## Lesson (2)

# WE USE THIS TO PICK UP THE TRASH

Listen and say.

استمع وقل.



nature camera

كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة



grabber

لاقط / ماسك



multi-grip

قبضة متعددة الأغراض



photocopier

آلة تصوير



laptop

حاسوب محمول



camera

كاميرا / آلة تصوير



speaker

مكبر صوت



headphones

سماعة رأس



scooter

سكوتر



radio

راديو



breathing mask

قناع التنفس



joysticks

ذراع / عصا التحكم

### Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

handle

مقبض

day center

مركز رعاية نهاري

film

بصور

record

يُسجل

button

زر (كهربياني)

install

يركب / يثبت

controller

جهاز تحكم

take off

يزيل

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

gloves	قفازات	games console	وحدة تحكم ألعاب
metal stick	عصا معدنية	forest	غابة
app	تطبيق	part	جزء
top	غطاء	photo copy	ينسخ ضوئياً "ورق"
exhibition	معرض	menu	قائمة

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

## Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
clean up	ينظف	cleaned up	cleaned up
pick up	يلتقط	picked up	picked up
collect	يجمع	collected	collected
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
squeeze	يعصر - يضغط	squeezed	squeezed
press	يضغط	pressed	pressed

## Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
wear	يرتدي / يلبس	wore	worn
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
put	يضع	put	put

## Definitions

تعريفات

<b>button</b>	something you press to make something happen	زر
<b>joysticks</b>	something you can move in different directions to control a computer game	ذراع / عصا تحكم
<b>controller</b>	something we use to play a computer game	جهاز تحكم



## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

## Tamim

When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use this to pick up the trash. It's great fun to use. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hands.

عندما نقوم بتنظيف الشاطئ، نرتدي قفازات لحماية أيدينا. نحمل أكياساً سوداء للقمامة التي نجمعها. وانظروا! نحن نستخدم هذا لالتقاط القمامة. إنه ممتع جداً في استخدامه. إنها عصا معدنية طويلة بذراعين في نهايتها. تفتح الأذرع وتغلق عند الضغط على المقبض في الأعلى. نقوم بفتح وإغلاق الأذرع لالتقاط المهملات، ثم تضعها في الكيس. تقول أمي إنه أفضل من التقاط الأشياء بيديك.

## Dalida

I volunteer at a **day center** for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use this to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

أنا أنطوع في مركز نهارى لكبار السن. بعض كبار السن لا يستطيعون فتح الزجاجات والبرطمانات. أيديهم ليست قوية بما فيه الكفاية. لذلك يستخدمون هذا لفتح الأغذية. هذه هي طريقة استخدامه. أمسك البرطمان بيد واحدة وضع هذا على الغطاء. أمسك هذا الجزء بيدك الأخرى، ثم قم بتدويره. إنها حقاً سهلة الاستعمال. أحب أن أعرض هذا على الأشخاص في المركز النهارى.

## Hamza

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher **installed** two of these in the forest. We're using them to **film** wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we **record** how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

نحن نقوم بتنفيذ مشروع عن الحياة البرية في المدرسة، وقد قام معلمي بتركيب اثنين من هذه في الغابة. نحن نستخدمها لتصوير الحياة البرية. لقد وضع واحدة على الأرض لتصوير الحيوانات ليلاً. ووضع الأخرى في شجرة لتصوير الطيور أثناء النهار. ثم نسجل عدد الحيوانات والطيور التي نراها وماذا يفعلون. إنه أمر مثير للاهتمام. لقد تعلمنا الكثير!

## Answer the following:

1. Why does Tamim use a grabber on a beach clean-up? .....
2. Why do the old people use a multi-grip? .....
3. Why does Hamza's teacher put nature cameras in the forest? .....



## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

- Mom** : Hi Amira. Is this your new games console? It looks great. What's this part for?  
مرحبا أميرة. هل هذه وحدة تحكم الألعاب الجديدة الخاصة بك؟ تبدو رائعة. ما هذا الجزء؟
- Amira** : Oh, that's the **controller**. It's what you use to play the game.  
أوه، هذا هو جهاز التحكم. هذا ما تستخدمه للعب اللعبة.
- Mom** : Cool! And what does this do?  
رائع! وما وظيفة هذا؟
- Amira** : That's the home **button**. When you press it, it takes you back to the menu.  
هذا هو زر الصفحة الرئيسية. وعندما تضغط عليه يعود بك إلى القائمة.
- Mom** : OK. And what are these buttons for?  
حسنًا. وفيم تستخدم هذه الأزرار؟
- Amira** : Those are the action buttons. You use them to tell your character to run, jump, or do other actions.  
تلك هي أزرار الحركة. يمكنك استخدامها لإخبار شخصيتك بالجري أو القفز أو القيام بحركات أخرى.
- Mom** : And what are these parts for?  
وفيم تستخدم هذه الأجزاء؟
- Amira** : They're the **joysticks**. They help you move your character around.  
إنها عصا التحكم. إنها تساعدك على تحريك شخصيتك.
- Mom** : OK. So, the home button takes you to the menu, and the buttons and joysticks are for playing the game.  
حسنًا. إذن، ينقلك زر الصفحة الرئيسية إلى القائمة، والأزرار وعصا التحكم مخصصة للعب اللعبة.
- Amira** : That's right. Do you want to play a game with me?  
هذا صحيح. هل تريد أن تلعب لعبة معي؟

## Read the description. What object is it?

People use this to play games or watch movies. You can use it to find information on the internet. You can also write essays and do your homework on it. You can't photocopy paper with it.



يستخدم الناس هذا لممارسة الألعاب أو مشاهدة الأفلام. يمكنك استخدامه للعثور على المعلومات على شبكة الإنترنت. يمكنك أيضًا كتابة المقالات والقيام بالواجبات المنزلية عليه. لا يمكنك تصوير الورق به.

People use this to listen to music or songs. You can use it to listen to the news. You can also use it to listen to comments on football matches and other sports. You can use headphones with it.

يستخدم الناس هذا للاستماع إلى الموسيقى أو الأغاني. يمكنك استخدامه للاستماع إلى الأخبار. يمكنك أيضًا استخدامه للاستماع إلى التعليقات على مباريات كرة القدم والرياضات الأخرى. يمكنك استخدام سماعة الرأس معه.





# Language

## Infinitives of purpose

(to + inf.) لكي (للتعبير عن الغرض)

- We use **to + a verb** in the base form to explain why we do something.

نستخدم " to + المصدر " لكي نوضح لماذا نفعل الشيء.

e.g. We wear gloves **to protect** our hands.

- We use also **to + base form verb** to answer questions with **why**.

نستخدم أيضًا " to + المصدر " لكي نجيب على الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ "Why".

e.g. **Why** do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up? **To protect** my hands.

### 1 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- I bought a card to .....(sent) to my grandma.
- Nesma wears sunglasses to .....(protecting) her eyes.
- My uncle went to Cairo to .....(visiting) a friend.
- Mom is using an app to .....(learns) French.
- Rahma listens to music to .....(helped) her relax.
- Lama painted a picture to .....(putting) in the exhibition.
- They make lemonade to .....(sells) in the market.
- Farah traveled by bus to .....(saw) her cousins.
- We bought some candy to .....(eats) during the movie.

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- We use the paintings to ..... the rooms look nicer.  
a) make      b) makes      c) made      d) making
- I went to the club ..... play games.  
a) in      b) to      c) at      d) on
- Heba wears jewelry to ..... good.  
a) looks      b) looked      c) look      d) looking



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We're doing a wildlife ..... at school.  
a) test                      b) quiz                      c) project                      d) essay
2. My teacher installed two nature ..... in the forest.  
a) mobiles                      b) cameras                      c) laptops                      d) computers
3. We're using them to ..... wildlife.  
a) film                      b) paint                      c) draw                      d) color
4. He put one on the ground to film animals at .....  
a) height                      b) noon                      c) night                      d) midnight

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When we do a beach clean-\*, ....., we wear gloves to protect our hands.  
a) down                      b) up                      c) after                      d) before
2. We use a ..... to pick up the trash.  
a) nature camera                      b) grabber                      c) multi-grip                      d) camera
3. The grabber is a long ..... stick.  
a) water                      b) silk                      c) metal                      d) paper
4. You can use the grabber when you squeeze the ..... at the top.  
a) candle                      b) handle                      c) sand                      d) land
5. I volunteer at a ..... center for old people.  
a) second                      b) time                      c) while                      d) day
6. They use a ..... to take off the tops.  
a) grabber                      b) nature camera                      c) multi-grip                      d) laptop
7. My teacher ..... two nature cameras in the forest.  
a) told                      b) called                      c) sold                      d) installed
8. A ..... is something you press to make something happen.  
a) controller                      b) button                      c) joystick                      d) photocopier
9. A ..... is something you can move in different directions to control a computer game.  
a) camera                      b) speaker                      c) joystick                      d) laptop
10. A ..... is something we use to play a computer game.  
a) scooter                      b) radio                      c) headphone                      d) controller



## Lesson (2)

3

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

top - strong - weak - open

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't

1) ..... glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't 2) ..... enough. So they use a multi-grip to take off the tops. They hold the jar with one hand and put the multi-grip on the 3) ..... to take it off.

4

**Read the following text then answer the questions.**

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two of nature cameras in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we record how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- We're doing a ..... project at school.  
a) science      b) geography      c) wildlife      d) industry
- My teacher ..... two nature cameras in the forest.  
a) took      b) gave      c) marked      d) installed

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- Where did the teacher put the other camera? .....
- What did they record? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

5

**Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

- water - under - You - swim - to - this - use - .  
.....
- ears - your - over - It's - goes - that - the part - .  
.....
- Lama - put - painted - to - a picture - the exhibition - in - .  
.....
- lemonade - to - the market - in - They - sell - make - .  
.....



5. by bus - her cousins - see - Farah - to - traveled - .

6. some candy - bought - the movie - to - We - during - eat - .

## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. A pen is used to ..... (writing) with.
2. Cameras are used ..... (for) take pictures.
3. You press the button to ..... (made) something happen.
4. We wear gloves to ..... (protecting) our hands.
5. We start a vegetable garden ..... (grows) fresh fruits and vegetables.
6. They use a multi-grip to ..... (took) off the tops.
7. I bought a card to ..... (sending) to my grandma.
8. I went to the sports center to ..... (played) volleyball.
9. He put the camera on the ground to ..... (filming) animals at night.
10. I opened the fridge to ..... (taking) a bottle of water.
11. You open and close the fingers ..... (at) pick up the trash.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

1. do you want to play a game with me
2. the home button takes you to the menu

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**A photocopier**

Guiding elements:

- What is it?
- What do people use it for?



# Lesson (3) IT'S GOOD TO GIVE BACK TO THE Part (A) COMMUNITY

## Key vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

timetable	جدول زمني	confidence	ثقة
charity	جمعية خيرية	volunteering	التطوع
interview	مقابلة شخصية	rewarding	مُجزٍ
fundraising	جمع تبرعات	community	مجتمع

## Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

teenagers	مراهقين	leader	قائد
healthy diet	نظام غذائي صحي	advice	نصيحة
donations	تبرعات	patiently	بصبر
kindly	بعطف	excellent	ممتاز
volunteer	متطوع	event	حدث
life skills	مهارات حياتية	trip	رحلة قصيرة

## Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

### Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
organize	ينظم	organized	organized
participate	يشارك	participated	participated
donate	يتبرع	donated	donated
welcome	يرحب بـ	welcomed	welcomed
socialize	يكون علاقات اجتماعية	socialized	socialized
deliver	يوصل	delivered	delivered

### Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	P.P
meet	يقابل	met	met
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
become	يصبح	became	become

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Important expressions and prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر هامة

came first	احتل المركز الأول	isn't like	ليس كمثل
interested in	مهتم بـ ...	16-year-old	السادسة عشر من عمره
spend time with	يقضي وقتاً مع	ever since	منذ ذلك الحين
if you can	إذا استطعت	sports events	أحداث رياضية
give back	يرد الجميل	help out	تمد يد المساعدة
that sounds like difficult	هذا يبدو صعباً	running race	سباق الجري
feel sure about	يشعر بالثقة حول	rewarding work	عمل مُجزٍ
a friendly way	بطريقة ودودة	collect money for	يجمع أموالاً من أجل

## Definitions

تعريفات

socialize	spend time with people in a friendly way	يختلط / يتواصل اجتماعياً
confidence	feeling sure about your abilities	ثقة
fundraising	collecting money for a charity	جمع تبرعات
give back	to help others because you have received so much	يرد الجميل

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

**Presenter :** Today we are talking about volunteering in the community, and here is a community volunteer leader. Rawan Ibrahim, Rawan, welcome! Can you tell us how you started volunteering?



سنحدث اليوم عن العمل التطوعي في المجتمع ومعنا هنا قائدة مجتمعية متطوعة. روان ابراهيم، روان، مرحباً! هل يمكنك أن تخبرينا كيف بدأت العمل التطوعي؟

**Rawan :** I first started volunteering when I was 13 at an after-school volunteer group. I began by helping the younger children with their reading and writing. I loved working with them, and I've volunteered ever since.

بدأت العمل التطوعي لأول مرة عندما كان عمري ١٣ عاماً في مجموعة تطوعية بعد المدرسة، بدأت بمساعدة الأطفال الصغار في القراءة والكتابة. أحببت العمل معهم، وتطوعت منذ ذلك الحين.



**Presenter :** Since then, 16-year-old Rawan has participated in many school and community projects. Now she volunteers in the Summer Schools Activity Group every summer. In the group, Rawan goes to parks and museums. She also organizes the volunteers for fundraising activities. Rawan, how do you find time to do all these things?

ومنذ ذلك الحين، شاركت روان البالغة من العمر ١٦ عاما في العديد من المشاريع المدرسية والمجتمعية، وهي الآن تتطوع في مجموعة أنشطة المدارس الصيفية كل صيف، وفي المجموعة، تساعد روان في أنشطة الأطفال. مثل الأحداث الرياضية والرحلات إلى الحدائق والمتاحف، كما أنها تنظم المتطوعين لأنشطة جمع التبرعات. روان، كيف تجددين الوقت للقيام بكل هذه الأشياء ؟

**Rawan :** It was hard at first, but I wrote a timetable to help me and then it was easy. And this year, I started volunteering with Food Box, a charity that delivers healthy meal boxes to families who need help. I became interested in Food Box because my mom volunteers there.

كان الأمر صعبا في البداية، لكنني كتبت جدولا زمنيا لمساعدتي، وبعد ذلك أصبح الأمر سهلا، وهذا العام، بدأت العمل التطوعي مع فود بوكس، وهي مؤسسة خيرية تقدم عبوات وجبات صحية للعائلات التي تحتاج إلى المساعدة، لقد أصبحت مهتما بفود بوكس ، لأن والدتي متطوعة هناك.

**Presenter :** That sounds like difficult but rewarding work.

يبدو هذا عملا صعبا ولكنه عمل مجز.

**Rawan :** Volunteering isn't like work. It's so much fun! At Food Box, I'm learning a lot about healthy food and what makes a healthy diet. I love delivering the food boxes and helping the children to be good citizens. Helping children makes me happy.

العمل التطوعي ليس مجرد عمل. إنه ممتع للغاية. في فود بوكس، أنا أتعلم الكثير عن الطعام الصحي وما الذي يجعل النظام الغذائي صحيا. أحب توصيل صناديق الطعام ومساعدة الأطفال على أن يكونوا مواطنين صالحين، مساعدة الأطفال تجعلني أشعر بالسعادة.



**Presenter :** Thank you for sharing your experience with us. Do you have any advice for teenagers?

شكراً لك على مشاركة تجربتك معنا. هل لديك أي نصيحة للمراهقين.

**Rawan :** You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is "Volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!"

أنت تتعلم العديد من المهارات الحياتية المهمة عندما تتطوع. تتعلم كيفية التواصل الاجتماعي والتحدث مع الأشخاص الذين لا تقابلهم عادة. كما يمنحك العمل التطوعي الثقة. إنه لأمر مدهش أن نرى كيف تنمو ثقة المراهقين عندما يبدأون العمل التطوعي. جمع التبرعات يساعد المؤسسات الخيرية في الحصول على الأموال التي تحتاجها. من الجيد أن ترد الجميل للمكان الذي تعيش فيه. نصيحتي للمراهقين هي «تطوع وساعد إذا

استطعت. سوف تستمتع بذلك!»

### Answer the following:

1. When do you learn life skills?

.....

2. What does volunteering give you?

.....

3. How does fundraising help charities?

.....

4. What is Rawan's advice to teenagers?

.....



# Language

## Adverbs

الأحوال / الظروف

① **An Adverb** is a word that describes a verb.

الحال / الظرف هو كلمة تصف فعل.

e.g. He waited **patiently**.

- They walked **quickly**.

### Form

② We can make adverbs by adding **-ly** to most adjectives.

يتكون الحال / الظرف بإضافة "ly" إلى معظم الصفات.

quick → **quickly**

slow → **slowly**

- Adjectives that end in a constant followed by **y**, add **-ily**.

الصفات التي تنتهي بساكن وبعده "y" نحول "y" إلى "ily".

happy → **happily**

angry → **angrily**

Adjective	Adverb	Adjective	Adverb
beautiful جميل	<b>beautifully</b> بجمال	angry غضبان	<b>angrily</b> بغضب
quiet هادئ	<b>quietly</b> بهدوء	happy سعيد	<b>happily</b> بسعادة
kind عطوف	<b>kindly</b> بعطف	patient صبور	<b>patiently</b> بصبر

③ Adverb normally comes after the verb.

الحال يأتي بعد الفعل.

e.g. He **shouted** **angrily**.

④ Adverbs can come before or after a verb and its object. The adverb can't come between the verb and its object.

يمكن أن تأتي الأحوال قبل أو بعد فعل ومفعوله. ولا يمكن أن تأتي بين الفعل ومفعوله.

e.g. She **quickly** **learned** the rules. (✓) - She learned quickly the rules. (✗)

She **learned** the rules **quickly**. (✓)

⑤ Some adverbs are irregular.

بعض الأحوال غير منتظمة.

Adjective	Adverb
good جيد	<b>well</b> بطريقة جيدة
fast سريع	<b>fast</b> بسرعة
hard صعب / شاق	<b>hard</b> بجهد

e.g. He is a **fast** runner. He runs **fast**.

She is **good** at painting. She paints **well**.



# 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. They walked .....  
a) quick                      b) quicker                      c) quickly                      d) quickest
2. He shouted .....  
a) angry                      b) hungrily                      c) anger                      d) angrily
3. She ..... learned the rules.  
a) quickest                      b) quick                      c) quicker                      d) quickly
4. Anas is a slow boy. He walks .....  
a) slow                      b) slowly                      c) slower                      d) slowest
5. The man was sad. He talked .....  
a) sadly                      b) sad                      c) happy                      d) happily

# 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Younis hates playing tennis. He plays .....(bad).
2. Dalia came first in the running race. She runs really .....(fast).
3. Sherif opened the door ..... (quiet) because his little brother was sleeping.
4. Maged's picture of a horse is excellent. He draws very ..... (good).
5. I heard two people shouting .....(angry) in the street today.
6. Adam was very hungry, and he ate his meal ..... (quick).
7. Their cousins donated money ..... (kind) to our charity.
8. Mr Ibrahim waited ..... (patient) for the train to arrive.
9. Fareeda .....(beautiful) plays the piano and the violin.
10. Dalida volunteered .....(happy) at the children's day center.
11. The lion hunted the deer ..... (quick) and ate it.
12. The teacher explained the lesson ..... (good).
13. The librarian gave me a book to read ..... (silent).
14. The children talked ..... (angry) to each other.
15. The sky was dark. It rained ..... (heavy).



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Rawan started ..... when she was 10 years old.  
a) swimming    b) reading    c) volunteering    d) cycling
2. She helps children learn .....  
a) speaking    b) writing    c) listening    d) reading
3. She likes helping children because they're important to our .....  
a) future    b) past    c) present    d) tense
4. Her advice for teenagers is be .....  
a) important    b) lazy    c) bored    d) patient

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Safia likes ..... It gives her confidence.  
a) eating    b) football    c) volunteering    d) watching TV
2. "....." means to spend time with people in a friendly way.  
a) Socialize    b) Visualize    c) Analyze    d) Volunteering
3. "....." means feeling sure about your abilities.  
a) Charity    b) Socialize    c) Teenagers    d) Confidence
4. .... helps charities get the money they need.  
a) Fundraising    b) Volunteering    c) Playing    d) Confidence
5. "....." means to help others because you have received so much.  
a) Fundraising    b) Confidence    c) Give back    d) Socialize

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Fundraising - amazing - confidence - socialize

You learn life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to .....  
and talk to people. It gives you 2) ..... when you start volunteering.  
3) ..... helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give  
back to the place where you live.



4

**Read the following text then answer the questions.**

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you live. My advice to teenagers is volunteer and help if you can. You'll enjoy it!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- When you volunteer, you learn many .....  
a) sports      b) life skills      c) charities      d) ideas
- Volunteering also gives you .....  
a) confidence      b) horror      c) fear      d) cheat

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What does the writer advise teenagers to do? .....
- What is the main idea of the text? .....
- What do teenagers gain when they volunteer? .....

5

**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- They lost the match because they played ..... (bad).
- You must cross the street ..... (careful).
- My brother can play football very ..... (good).
- Ali shouted ..... (angry) at his sister.
- Omar can run ..... (fastly). He always wins.

6

**Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

- children - helping - Why - like - Seif - does - ?  
.....
- money - they - need - Fundraising - the - get - helps - charities - .  
.....



# Lesson (3) Part (B)

## READING

### Key Vocabulary

كلمات أساسية

reward	مكافأة	silver	فضة	sparrow	عصفور
seed	بذرة	gold	ذهب	jealous	غيور - حقود

### Extra vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

broken	مكسور	again	مجددًا	alone	وحيدًا
money	مال	thick	سميك	rich	غني
village	قرية	little	صغير "قليل"	strong	قوي

### Conjugation of verbs

تصريف الأفعال

#### Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

#### Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	P.P
reach يصل	reached	reached
share يشارك	shared	shared
plant يزرع	planted	planted
reply يرد	replied	replied

Present	Past	P.P
cut يقطع	cut	cut
catch يمسك	caught	caught
break يمسك	broke	broken
grow ينمو	grew	grown

### Important expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Here is	تفضل	look after = care for	يعتني بـ
One day, ...	يوماً ما ...	go back	يعود
The richest man	أغنى رجل	Don't worry, ...	لا تقلق ...
a broken wing	جناح مكسور	climb up	يتسلق
fly away	يطير بعيداً	look down	ينظر لأسفل
cut one open	قطع واحدة وفتحها	look for	يبحث عن

### Definitions

تعريفات

jealous	feeling unhappy because someone has what you want	غيور
reward	something you get for doing a good job or being helpful	مكافأة

Help your child identify these words.

ساعد طفلك أن يتعرف على هذه الكلمات.



## Two Brothers, Two Rewards

## The Beginning

Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village. He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends.

ذات مرة، كان هناك شقيقان مختلفان تمامًا. كان الأخ الأكبر أغنى رجل في القرية. لقد كان ثريًا، لكنه كان دائمًا يريد المزيد من المال. لم يكن الأخ الأصغر ثريًا، لكنه كان لطيفًا ويشارك ما كان لديه مع أصدقائه.

## The Middle

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a **reward**," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."

في أحد الأيام، وجد الأخ الأصغر طائرًا جناحه مكسور. قال: "لا تقلق أيها الطائر الصغير سوف أعني بك." لقد اعتنى بالطائر طوال فصل الشتاء، وعندما أصبح الطائر قويًا مرة أخرى، قال: "يمكنك الطيران بعيدًا الآن." قال الطائر: "أولاً، أريد أن أعطيك مكافأة ازرع هذه البذرة في حديقتك واعتني بها كما اعتنيت بي."

The brother planted the seed and watched it grow into a huge plant with big, orange vegetables. When the brother cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

زرع الأخ البذرة وشاهدها وهي تنمو لتصبح نباتًا ضخماً يحتوي على خضروات برتقالية اللون. وعندما فتح الأخ واحدة، كانت مليئة بالذهب والفضة! والآن أصبح أغنى رجل في القرية!

## The End

The older brother was **jealous**. He went to his brother's house, and his brother told him about the bird. The next day, the older brother caught a **sparrow** and broke its wing. He said, "I'll look after you, then you can give me a reward." He looked after the bird, and when it was strong, he said, "Now I want my reward." The little bird replied, "Here is your reward. Plant this seed and look after it well."

كان الأخ الأكبر غيورًا. ذهب إلى بيت أخيه، فأخبره أخوه عن الطائر. في اليوم التالي، أمسك الأخ الأكبر بعصفور وكسر جناحه. وقال له: "سأعتني بك، ثم يمكنك أن تعطيني مكافأة." اعتنى بالطائر، وعندما أصبح قويًا، قال: "الآن أريد مكافأتك." أجاب الطائر الصغير: "هذه هي مكافأتك. ازرع هذه البذرة واعتني بها جيدًا."

The older brother planted the seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.

زرع الأخ الأكبر البذرة، وسرعان ما نما نبات طويل وسميك ووصل إلى القمر. تسلق الأخ النبات ليجد مكافأته. ولكن عندما وصل إلى القمر اختفى النبات. لقد كان وحيدًا، ولم يتمكن من العودة.

The older brother didn't find any gold. So now, he looks down from the Moon, and watches his kind, younger brother living happily and helping others.

لم يجد الأخ الأكبر أي ذهب. والآن، ينظر للأسفل من القمر، ويشاهد أخاه الطيب الأصغر يعيش بسعادة ويساعد الآخرين.



# Lesson (3) Part (C)

## PRONUNCIATION

Look, listen and repeat.

انظر، استمع وردد.

ch, sh and tch sounds



rich  
غني



chop  
يقطع



fish  
سمكة



shoe  
فردة حذاء



watch  
يشاهد



catch  
يمسك

sh /ʃ/

ship

سفينة

sheep

خروف / غنم

wash

يغسل

shirt

قميص

shop

محل / يتسوق

cash

نقد

shells

أصداف

dishes

أطباق

ch /tʃ/

chip

رقاقة

lunch

غذاء

reach

يصل

chicken

دجاجة

teacher

معلم / معلمة

tch /tʃ/

kitchen

مطبخ

catch

يمسك

watch

يشاهد



Complete the words with sh, ch, or tch.

\_\_\_ eep

ca \_\_\_

wa \_\_\_

lun \_\_\_

\_\_\_ op

di \_\_\_ es

wa \_\_\_

fi \_\_\_

tea \_\_\_ er

\_\_\_ op

ki \_\_\_ en

rea \_\_\_

Help your child say words containing sh, ch, and tch.

ساعد طفلك أن يقول كلمات تحتوي على sh و ch و tch



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The older brother ..... a seed.  
a) dug                      b) brought                      c) planted                      d) saw
2. The brother climbed ..... the plant.  
a) down                      b) up                      c) in                      d) on
3. When he reached the ....., the plant disappeared.  
a) moon                      b) sun                      c) star                      d) sky
4. He was alone, and he couldn't ..... back.  
a) swim                      b) run                      c) go                      d) fly

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The younger brother was kind to his .....  
a) books                      b) friends                      c) plants                      d) bags
2. .... means feeling unhappy because someone has what you want.  
a) Sparrow                      b) Jealous                      c) Reward                      d) Award
3. The older brother caught a ..... and broke its wing.  
a) cow                      b) fox                      c) sparrow                      d) dog
4. "....." means something you get for doing a good job or being helpful.  
a) Advice                      b) Quiz                      c) Test                      d) Reward

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

present - away - after - broken

One day, the younger brother found a bird with a 1) ..... wing.  
"Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look 2) ..... you." He cared for  
the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can  
fly 3) ..... now." "First, I want to give you a reward" said the bird. "Plant  
this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me."



#### 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

One day, a younger farmer found a bird with a broken wing. "Don't worry, little bird," he said. "I will look after you." He cared for the bird all winter, and when the bird was strong again, he said, "You can fly away now." "First, I want to give you a reward," said the bird. "Plant this seed in your garden and look after it like you looked after me." The farmer planted the seed and watched it grow into a huge plant with big, orange vegetables. When he cut one open, it was full of gold and silver! He was now the richest man in the village!

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The bird had a broken .....  
a) beak      b) wing      c) leg      d) bone
- The underlined word "winter" is a .....  
a) season      b) subject      c) month      d) sport

#### B) Answer the following questions.

- What do you think of the farmer? .....
- What was one of the orange vegetables full of? .....
- Summarize the text on one sentence. ....

#### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- brother - his - of - jealous - brother - The older - is - younger - .  
.....

- the bird - What - give - did - the - brother - younger - ?  
.....

#### 6 Punctuate the following.

- he was rich but wanted more money  
.....

- what did he do to the bird  
.....



# Lessons (4 & 5)

## WRITING: A BIOGRAPHY PROJECT

### Vocabulary

### الكلمات

biography	سيرة ذاتية يكتبها شخص عن آخر	leader	قائد
youth	الشباب	award	يمنح جائزة
preparatory school	الدراسة الإعدادية	fundraiser	جامع تبرعات
university	جامعة	citizen	مواطن
social science	العلوم الاجتماعية	waste	فضلات
playground	ملعب	draft	مسودة
shopping	تسوق	timeline	خط زمني
event	حدث	leaflet	منشور / نشرة / مطوية
food boxes	صناديق طعام	headings	عناوين رئيسية
fundraising	جمع تبرعات	local	محلي
successful	ناجح	neighbor	جار

### Conjugation of verbs

### تصريف الأفعال

Present		Past	P.Past
organize	ينظم	organized	organized
deliver	يُوصل	delivered	delivered
raise	يجمع	raised	raised
improve	يُحسن	improved	improved
offer	يعرض	offered	offered
reduce	يقلل	reduced	reduced
recycle	يعيد تدوير	recycled	recycled
participate	يُشارك	participated	participated
lead	يقود	led	led
win	يفوز	won	won

### Important expressions and prepositions

### تعبيرات وحروف جر هامة

Youth Give Back	الشباب يرد الجميل	beach clean-up	تنظيف الشاطئ
run a charity	يدير جمعية خيرية	a good citizen	مواطن صالح



Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

## Fareeda Hassan: A Biography

فريدة حسن: سيرة ذاتية

### Early Life

مرحلة مبكرة من الحياة

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping.



ولدت فريدة حسن في الإسكندرية عام 1994. عندما كانت طفلة، ساعدت فريدة والدتها في شراء مشتريات جيرانها الأكبر سنًا.

### Volunteering at School

العمل التطوعي في المدرسة

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

بدأت فريدة الدراسة للمرحلة الإعدادية في عام 2006. وشاركت وقتها في أول حدث تطوعي لها. قامت هي وفريق من المتطوعين بتنظيف الشاطئ. في عام 2010، نظمت أول حدث خيري لها لتوصيل صناديق الطعام للعائلات في المجتمع.

### The University Years

سنوات الجامعة

In 2012, Fareeda went to university to study social sciences. Here, she organized a fundraising event to raise money for a new playground.

في عام 2012، ذهبت فريدة إلى الجامعة لدراسة العلوم الاجتماعية. وقتها قامت بتنظيم حدث لجمع التبرعات من أجل ملعب جديد.

### Working in Charities

العمل في الجمعيات الخيرية

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a community volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has helped many people. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.

في عام 2017، بدأت فريدة وظيفتها الأولى كقائدة مجتمعية متطوعة في القاهرة. ومنذ ذلك الحين، ساعدت الكثير من الناس. وفي عام 2020، قادت مشروع "الشباب يرد الجميل" في ست مدن في مصر. لقد كان ناجحًا جدًا لدرجة أنها فازت بجائزة "العامل المجتمعي لعام 2020". واليوم تدير مؤسسة خيرية للأطفال.

## Read the biography again and answer the questions:

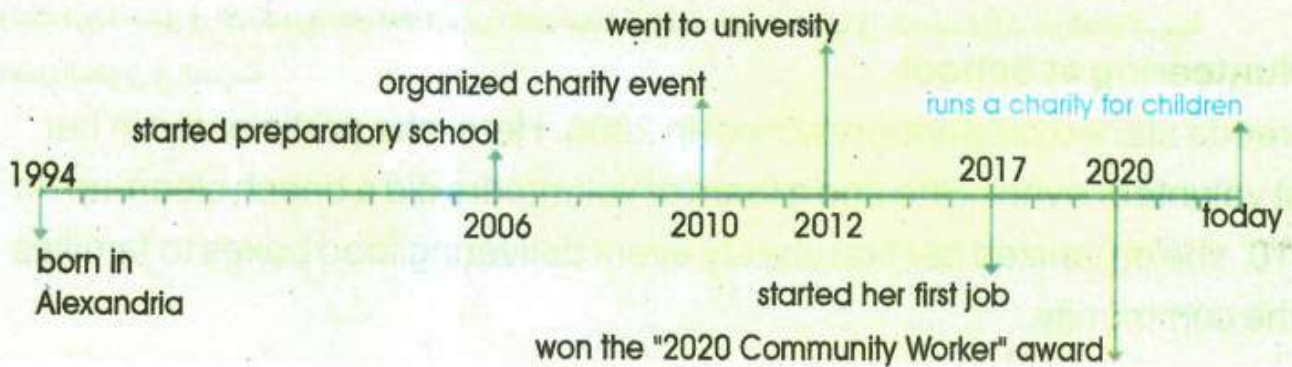
1. How did Fareeda help her neighbors when she was a child? .....
2. What was her first volunteer event at preparatory school? .....
3. What did she study at university? .....
4. What award did she win? .....



**Tip!**

When writing a biography, it helps to make a timeline of events, starting from the date of birth. Add important events and their dates to the timeline. This helps you organize the information in the correct order.

عند كتابة سيرة ذاتية من المفيد أن تعمل جدول زمني للأحداث، يبدأ من تاريخ الميلاد. أضف الأحداث المهمة وتواريخها إلى الجدول الزمني. وهذا يساعدك على تنظيم المعلومات بالترتيب الصحيح.

**Read the biography again. Notice the timeline.****Tips of write a biography.**

- |  |                                 |
|--|---------------------------------|
| 1. Write the information in date order.  | تكتب المعلومات بالتسلسل الزمني. |
| 2. Include events with dates.            | تتضمن الأحداث الهامة بالتواريخ. |
| 3. Divide the information into sections. | تقسم المعلومات إلى أجزاء.       |
| 4. Add headings for each section.        | تضيف عنوان لكل جزء.             |
| 5. Write in the past tense.              | تكتب في زمن الماضي.             |

**Volunteering at School**

heading عنوان

events with dates حدث بتاريخه

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

date order ترتيب زمني





# Project

Read the leaflet. How can you reduce waste?

## Ways to Be a Good Citizen

There are lots of ways you can volunteer to help your community.

هناك الكثير من الطرق التي يمكنك من خلالها التطوع لمساعدة مجتمعتك.



**Respect Others:** Be polite and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or sick. Call your neighbors to ask how you can help. You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home.

احترام الآخرين: كن مهذباً ولطيفاً مع جيرانك. ساعد الأشخاص المسنين أو المرضى. اتصل بجيرانك واسألهم كيف يمكنك المساعدة. يمكنك أن تعرض عليهم القيام بالتسوق أو القيام بأعمال لهم في المنزل.

### Protect the Environment:

Reduce waste and help the environment. Don't use plastic bags or plastic bottles. If you have plastic bottles at home, recycle them.

Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place!

حماية البيئة: قلل النفايات وساعد البيئة. لا تستخدم أكياس بلاستيكية أو زجاجات بلاستيكية. كان لديك زجاجات بلاستيكية في المنزل، فم بإعادة تدويرها. لنكن جميعاً مواطنين صالحين ونجعل العالم مكان أفضل!

**Help the Community:** Volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering isn't boring. It's interesting. You'll be surprised how much you enjoy it.

مساعدة المجتمع: تطوع في حدث خيري محلي أو ساعد في مشروع مجتمعي. العمل التطوعي ليس مملاً. إنه شيق. سوف تندهش بمدى استمتاعك به.



Read again and answer.

1. What could you do for your neighbors?

2. What ways could you volunteer in your community?

3. What could you do to help the environment?



# General Activities

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fareeda started ..... school in 2006.  
a) primary      b) preparatory      c) secondary      d) university
2. She participated in her first volunteer .....  
a) hint      b) tent      c) event      d) competition
3. She did a beach clean- .....  
a) down      b) on      c) at      d) up
4. In 2010, she organized her first ..... event.  
a) helping      b) calling      c) charity      d) planting

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Be polite and ..... to your neighbors.  
a) cruel      b) bad      c) kind      d) hard
2. .... waste and help the environment.  
a) Increase      b) Reduce      c) Hire      d) Bring
3. Volunteering isn't .....  
a) good      b) interesting      c) boring      d) better
4. Let's all be good ..... and make the world a better place.  
a) players      b) citizens      c) engineers      d) divers

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

successful - led - helped - community

In 2017, Fareeda started her first job as a 1) ..... volunteer leader in Cairo. Since then, she has 2) ..... many people. In 2020, she started a "Youth Give Back" project in six cities in Egypt. It was so 3) ..... that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award. Today, she runs a charity for children.



**4 Read the following text then answer the questions.**

We all live together in a community. We should be good citizens. There are lots of ways, we can volunteer to help our community. We can volunteer at a local charity event or help out on a community project. Volunteering is interesting. We must be polite and kind to our neighbors. We could call neighbors and offer to do their shopping. We must respect the environment. We could reduce waste and recycle plastic bottles. Let's all be good citizens and make the world a better place.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The main idea of the text is about being .....  
a) community    b) good citizens    c) neighbors    d) recycle
- The word "interesting" is the opposite of .....  
a) exciting    b) bored    c) boring    d) amazing

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What could we do to help the environment? .....
- How should you deal with neighbors? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

- started - She - 2007 - preparatory - in - school -  
.....
- environment - the - What - help - to - do - you - could - ?  
.....

**6 Punctuate the following.**

- help people who are old or sick  
.....
- fareeda was born in cairo.  
.....

**7 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

Guiding elements:

**Ways to be a good citizen**

- Respect others.

- Help the community.



# Writing Corner

## Volunteering

Volunteering is a very good way to help our community. It's interesting. At school, we started a project called "Community Help". We had to choose something we could do to support other people or things in our community. Some people planted a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.

## A wildlife project

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two nature cameras in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we record how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing. It's so interesting. We've learned a lot!

## Volunteering

You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to socialize and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet. Volunteering also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how teenagers grow in confidence when they start volunteering. Fundraising helps charities get the money they need. It's good to give back to the place where you like.

## A biography

Fareeda Hassan was born in Alexandria in 1994. As a child, Fareeda helped her mom buy her elder neighbors' shopping. Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community. In 2020, she led a "Youth Give Back" project in Egypt. It was so successful that she won the "2020 Community Worker" award.



# Review on Unit (11)

## Vocabulary

donate	يتبرع	participate	يشارك	support	يساند - يدعم
volunteer	يتطوع	help out	يساعد في	start up	يبدأ
jealous	غيور	multi-grip	مقبض متعدد الأغراض	install	يركب / يثبت
record	يسجل	reward	يكافئ / مكافأة	sparrow	عصفور
kind to	عطوف مع	look after	يعتني بـ	day center	مركز رعاية نهاري
confidence	ثقة	fundraising	جمع تبرعات	give back	يرد الجميل
grabber	أداة التقاط / ماسك	handle	مقبض	film	يُصور
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا	nature camera			كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة

## Pronunciation

sh /ʃ/		ch /tʃ/		tch /tʃ/	
shoe	فردة حذاء	rich	غني	watch	يشاهد
shop	محل	chop	يقطع	catch	يمسك
ship	سفينة	chip	رقاقة	kitchen	مطبخ

## Language

### to + inf.

- نستخدم (to + inf) لبيان الغرض.

We wear gloves **to protect** our hands.

## Adverbs

### الظروف

- **An Adverb** is a word that describes a verb.

الحال / الظرف هو كلمة تصف الفعل.

quick → quickly

- يتكون الحال بإضافة "ly" إلى الصفة.

- They walk **quickly**.

- هناك بعض الأحوال الشاذة.

good → well

fast → fast

hard → hard

- He runs **fast**.

- She plays **well**.



# Dictation on Unit (11)

Review on

## Lesson (1)

يساند / يدعم	يتطوع
يشارك	يساعد في
يبدأ	عطوف مع
يعتني بـ	قمامة

## Lesson (2)

مقبض متعدد الأغراض	مقبض
كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة	مركز رعاية نهارية
ماسك / لاقط	زر
ذراع تحكم	جهاز تحكم

## Lesson (3)

يتواصل اجتماعيًا	ثقة
جمع تبرعات	يرد الجميل
مكافأة	غيور
عصفور	غني
يشاهد	خراف / خروف
فردة حذاء	يقطع
يمسك	مطبخ
رقاقة	سفينة
يغسل	غذاء
يصل	أطباق

## Lessons (4 & 5)

يحترم	بيئة
يحمي	مشروع
يساعد	يقلل
مجتمع	يعيد تدوير



# Activities on Unit (11)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I love .....  
a) singing      b) dancing      c) reading      d) diving
2. I decided to ..... in the kindergarten class.  
a) help out      b) cut off      c) look for      d) make out
3. I love reading ..... with the younger children.  
a) magazines      b) articles      c) stories      d) leaflets
4. We're starting ..... a project.  
a) up      b) out      c) down      d) of

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. We ..... to help in the community service project every year.  
a) dismiss      b) volunteer      c) press      d) do
2. I help mom and look ..... my little brother.  
a) before      b) down      c) after      d) up
3. Children who ..... in a group activity usually have lots of fun!  
a) participate      b) look      c) make      d) write

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Painted - having - sad - hospital

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the 1) ..... She's better now, but when we visited her, she was 2) ..... because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I 3) ..... lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees.

## 4 Read the following text then answer the questions.

When we do a beach clean-up, we wear gloves to protect our hands. We carry black bags for the trash we collect. And look! We use a grabber to pick up the trash. It's a long metal stick with two fingers at the end. The fingers open and close when you squeeze the handle at the top. You open and close the fingers to pick up the trash, then drop it in the bag. Mom says it's better than picking things up with your hand.



**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- When we do a beach clean-up we, wear gloves to ..... our hands.  
a) cut                      b) bleed                      c) protect                      d) spoil
- We use a ..... to pick up the trash.  
a) nature camera      b) grabber                      c) multi-grip                      d) radio

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- Describe the grabber. ....
- What's your mother's opinion about the grabber? ....
- What is the general idea of the text? ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

- children - my - in - school - help - to - wanted - I - .  
.....
- to - center - I - to play - volleyball - went - the sports - .  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- They make lemonade to ..... (selling) in the market.
- Talia draws very ..... (good).

**7 Punctuate the following.**

- sherif s picture is nice.  
.....
- be polite and kind to your neighbors  
.....

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:****Scooter****Guiding elements:**

-What is it?

- What do people use it for?



# Al-Azhar Corner

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

character - buttons - menu - do - controller

- Mom : Your new games console looks great. What is this part for?  
 Amira: That's the 1) ..... You use it to play the game.  
 Mom : What does this 2) ..... ?  
 Amira: That's the home button. It takes you back to the 3) .....  
 Mom : What are these 4) ..... for?  
 Amira: For telling your 5) ..... to run or jump.



## Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

went - preparatory - started - university - 1994

- Anas : When was Fareeda Hassan born?  
 Seif : She was born in 1) .....  
 Anas : When did she start 2) ..... school?  
 Saif : She 3) ..... in 2006.  
 Anas : When did she go to 4) ..... ?  
 Saif : She 5) ..... to university in 2012.

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |               |             |          |             |         |
|---------------|-------------|----------|-------------|---------|
| 1. donate     | participate | support  | volunteered | (.....) |
| 2. What       | Why         | was      | Who         | (.....) |
| 3. flowers    | beaches     | trees    | plants      | (.....) |
| 4. kind       | start up    | help out | look after  | (.....) |
| 5. headphones | scooter     | play     | radio       | (.....) |



## Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |            |         |         |         |         |
|------------|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. angry   | good    | quickly | bad     | (.....) |
| 2. angrily | quietly | quickly | slow    | (.....) |
| 3. sheep   | fish    | shoes   | watch   | (.....) |
| 4. lunch   | chop    | chip    | catch   | (.....) |
| 5. camera  | radio   | laptop  | snorkel | (.....) |



# Unit 12

## FICTION READER: ATEMU AND AMETHYST

أتمو والحمامة أميثست



BY JENNY FARMER  
ILLUSTRATED BY MATT WARD



# Characters



**Atemu**

أتمو



**Nedjem**

نيجم



**Father**

الأب



**Mother**

الأم



**Mr. Akhon**

السيد آخون



**Amethyst**

الحمامة أميثست





**amethyst**

جمشت (حجر أرجواني)



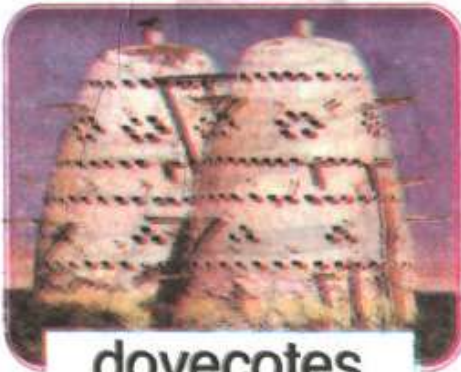
**carpenter**

نجار



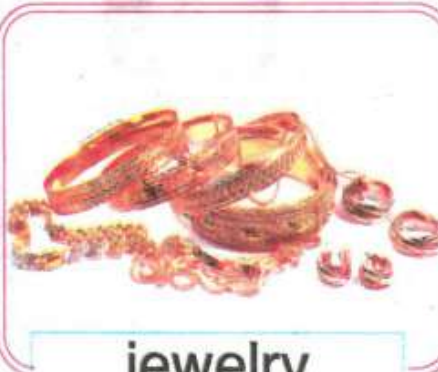
**carrier pigeon**

الحمام الزاجل



**dovecotes**

أبراج الحمام



**jewelry**

مجوهرات



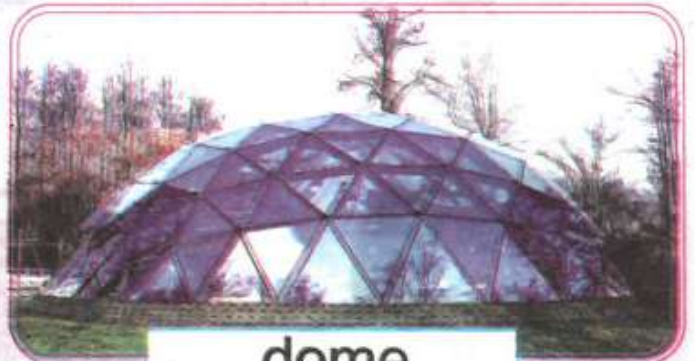
**order**

طلب



**COO**

هديل (صوت الحمام)



**dome**

قبة



**scribe**

الكاتب



**yard**

فناء المنزل



# Part (1)

## The Beginning



Once upon a time, a long, long, time ago, a boy called Atemu lived in the Nile Delta. His home was in a small village, and he lived with his parents and his big sister, Nedjem. Atemu was twelve, but he didn't go to school. His father worked as a **carpenter**. He was teaching Atemu how to make things from wood.

Atemu loved animals, especially birds. He liked to watch the birds that came into his yard. Every day, Atemu gave some **grain** to the birds. He enjoyed watching them eat. Often, his sister's cat came into the yard and watched the birds, too. It sometimes jumped at the birds, but it never caught them. It was a very slow cat.

كان يا ما كان، منذ زمن بعيد، عاش صبي يدعى أتيمو في دلتا النيل. كان منزله في قرية صغيرة، وكان يعيش مع والديه وأخته الكبرى نيجم. كان أتيمو في الثانية عشرة من عمره، لكنه لم يذهب إلى المدرسة. كان والده يعمل نجاراً. وكان يعلم أتيمو كيفية صنع الأشياء من الخشب. كان أتيمو يحب الحيوانات، وخاصة الطيور. كان يحب مشاهدة الطيور التي تأتي إلى فناء منزله. كل يوم، كان أتيمو يعطي بعض الحبوب للطيور. كان يستمتع بمشاهدتهم وهم يأكلون. في كثير من الأحيان، كانت قطة أخته تأتي إلى الفناء وتراقب الطيور أيضاً. وكانت أحياناً تقفز على الطيور، لكنها لم تمسك بهم أبداً. لقد كانت قطة بطيئة جداً.





One day in October, Atemu was in the yard when he heard a strange noise. He looked up and saw something amazing. A huge **flock** of birds were flying over his village. They were coming down to a field nearby.

"Mom! Mom!" shouted Atemu. "There are so many birds! Can I go and see them?" His Mom came out of the house and looked. "Wow!" she said. "Yes, you can go."

She filled a bowl with grain. "Here you are," she said kindly. "You can take this for them."

في أحد أيام شهر أكتوبر، كان أتيمو في الفناء عندما سمع ضجيجًا غريبًا. نظر للأعلى ورأى شيئًا مذهلاً. كان سرب ضخم من الطيور يحلق فوق قريته. كانوا ينزلون إلى حقل قريب.  
صاح أتيمو: "أمي! أمي! هناك الكثير من الطيور! هل يمكنني الذهاب ورؤيتهم؟" خرجت والدته من المنزل ونظرت وقالت "واو! نعم، يمكنك الذهاب."  
ملأت وعاء بالحبوب وقالت بلطف: "تفضل، يمكنك أن تأخذ هذا لهم."





When Atemu got to the fields, he couldn't believe his eyes. There were thousands of birds. Every one of them was light gray, with shiny green feathers on its neck and purple feathers on its chest. They were beautiful! They called to each other with a long "whoo" sounds. Atemu threw the grain to the birds. They ate it hungrily. Then, suddenly, they flew into the sky again. Atemu watched them go.

عندما وصل أتيمو إلى الحقول، لم يصدق عينيه. كان هناك الآلاف من الطيور. كان لون كل واحد منهم رمادي فاتح، وله ريش أخضر لامع على رقبته وريش أرجواني على صدره. كانت طيورًا جميلة! كانوا ينادون بعضهم البعض بأصوات "whoo" الطويلة. ألقى أتيمو الحبوب للطيور. أكلوها بتهمة (بشراهة). ثم فجأة طاروا إلى السماء مرة أخرى. شاهدتهم أتيمو وهم يذهبون.





Then he noticed a bird at his feet. It was looking at him. "Coo, coo, coo, coo," it went.

"I don't have any grain for you, bird," said Atemu.

"Coo, coo, coo, coo," went the bird.

The noise was different from the other birds. It looked different too. First, it was bigger. The other birds had yellow beaks, but this bird's beak was dark gray. This bird also had stripes on its wings. Atemu could see something strange on its leg, too.

Just then, Atemu heard his mother calling him.

Atemu started walking quickly, but he could hear the bird behind him. It was **following** him!

"Why don't you fly with your friends?" said Atemu, but the bird just cooed.

ثم لاحظ طائراً عند قدميه. كان ينظر إليه، وكان يصيح باستمرار "كو، كو، كو، كو"  
قال أتيمو: "ليس لدي أي حبوب لك أيها الطائر".

صاح الطائر "كو، كو، كو، كو"

كان الصوت مختلفاً عن الطيور الأخرى. بدا الطائر مختلفاً أيضاً. أولاً، كان أكبر حجماً. كانت الطيور الأخرى مناقيرها صفراء، أما منقار هذا الطائر فكان لونه رمادي داكن. وكان لهذا الطائر أيضاً خطوط على جناحيه. استطاع أتيمو أن يرى شيئاً غريباً على ساقه أيضاً.

وعندئذ سمع أتيمو والدته تناديه.

بدأ أتيمو بالمشي بسرعة، لكنه كان يسمع الطائر خلفه. لقد كان يتبعه!  
قال أتيمو "لماذا لا تطير مع أصدقائك؟" ولكن كان الطائر فقط يهدل.





# Activities

## 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Atemu lived in a big town.
2. Nedjem was Atemu's older sister.
3. Atemu was ten years old.
4. Atemu went to school.
5. Atemu's father made things from wood.
6. Atemu had a cat.
7. The birds called to each other with a short "whoo" sound.

## 2 Read and complete the following.

1. Atemu's father worked as a .....
2. Atemu gave some ..... to the birds.
3. A huge ..... of birds were flying over his village.
4. All the birds were light ....., with shiny green ..... on their necks.
5. Atemu lived in the .....
6. Atemu's father was teaching him to make things from .....
7. Atemu's mother filled a bowl with .....

## 3 Answer the following questions.

1. What is the story mainly about? .....
2. When and where did the story happen? .....
3. Where did Atemu live? .....
4. How old was Atemu? .....
5. How did the birds call each other? .....
6. What did Atemu throw to the birds? .....
7. What did the bird have on its wings? .....
8. How was the cat? .....



## Part (2)

## The Middle



When Atemu got to his yard, the bird came in after him. He watched it while he cleaned vegetables for dinner.

Then he saw Nedjem's cat. It was watching the bird, too.

Suddenly, the cat jumped on the bird! But the bird didn't fly away.

Nedjem ran and picked up the cat.

"You should catch rats and snakes, not birds!" she said.

"What's wrong with that bird? It can't fly," said their mother. "Is it hurt?"

"Maybe!" said Atemu. "It didn't fly with the other birds." Atemu walked to the bird.

When he touched its left wing, it made a quiet sound.

"I think its wing is hurt," said Atemu.

عندما وصل أتيمو إلى فناء منزله، دخل الطائر بعده. كان يشاهده بينما كان ينظف الخضار لتناول العشاء.

ثم رأى قطّة نيجم. وكانت تراقب الطائر أيضاً.

وفجأة قفزت القطّة على الطائر! لكن الطائر لم يطر بعيداً.

ركضت نيجم والتقطت القطّة.

قالت "يجب أن تصطاد الفئران والثعابين، وليس الطيور!"

قالت والدتهم: "ما مشكلة هذا الطائر؟ لا يمكنه الطيران. هل هو مُصاب؟"

قال أتيمو "ربما! لم يطر مع الطيور الأخرى." مشى أتيمو نحو الطائر.

عندما لمس جناحه الأيسر، أصدر صوتاً هادئاً.

قال أتيمو: "أعتقد أن جناحه مُصاب."





When Atemu's father came home, Atemu showed him the bird. "It has a hurt wing, and there is something on its leg."

"Poor bird!" said his father. "What is that?" He took the object from the bird's leg.

It was a very small wooden box. Atemu's father opened it. A piece of papyrus paper was inside.

"It's a message!" said Atemu's father. "This bird is a **carrier pigeon**."

"What's a carrier pigeon?" asked Atemu.

عندما عاد والد أتيمو إلى المنزل، أراه أتيمو الطائر وقال «إن له جناحاً مُصاباً وهناك شيء ما على ساقه».

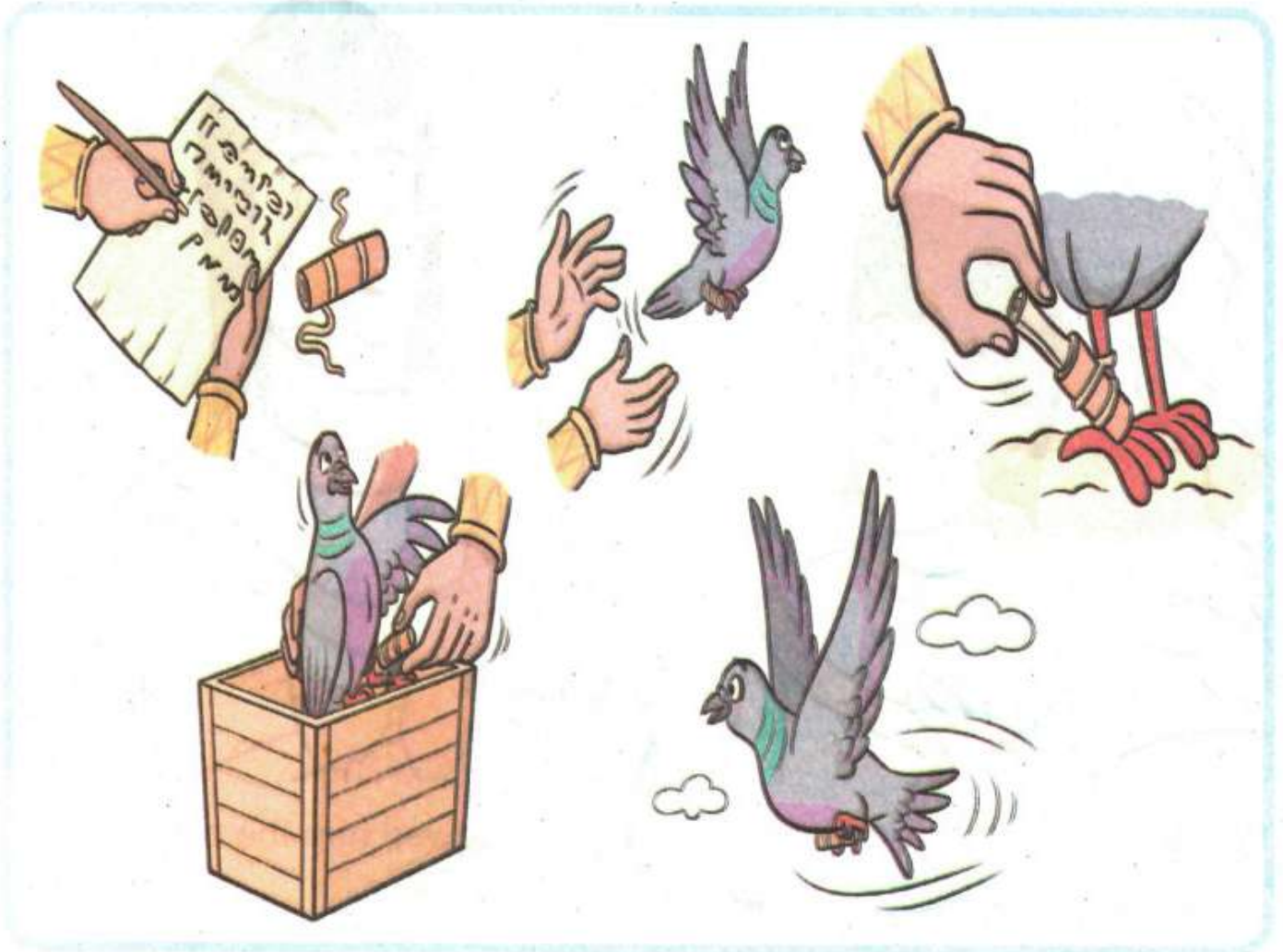
قال والده "طائر مسكين!" "ما هذا؟" وأخذ الشيء من ساق الطائر.

لقد كان صندوقاً خشبياً صغيراً جداً. فتحه والد أتيمو. وكانت هناك قطعة من ورق البردي بداخله.

قال والد أتيمو "إنها رسالة!" "هذا الطائر هو حمامة زاجلة."

سأل أتيمو "ما هو الحمام الزاجل؟"





"It's a bird which carries messages," said his father. "Important people in the city keep pigeons. The pigeons learn where they live. Then people take the pigeons to new places. When there is news from that place, they attach the message to the pigeon. It flies home and carries the message. That's why they're called carrier pigeons." "That's very clever!" said Atemu. "So, what does this message say?" "I don't know," said his father. "I'll take it to my friend, the scribe."

قال والده: "إنه طائر يحمل الرسائل. الأشخاص المهمون في المدينة يربون الحمام. يتعلم الحمام أين يعيشون. ثم يأخذ الناس الحمام إلى أماكن جديدة. عندما يكون هناك أخبار من ذلك المكان، يعلقون الرسالة على الحمامة. وتطير إلى المنزل وتحمل الرسالة. ولهذا السبب يطلق عليهم الحمام الزاجل."

قال أتيمو "هذا ذكي جدًا! إذن ماذا تقول هذه الرسالة؟"

قال والده: "لا أعرف سأخذها إلى صديقي الكاتب."





Atemu looked after the pigeon. He made it a high table which the cat couldn't jump onto. He gave it water and grain and talked to it. The pigeon cooed back happily. Atemu's father went to the city. Three days later he came home. "Did you speak to the scribe?" said Atemu.

"Yes," said his father. "The message was for a jewelry **merchant** in the city, Mr Akhon. I took him the message, and he was very happy! It was an **order** for a lot of gold jewelry from the capital city. It was very important for him."

"Mr Akhon also wants his pigeon. We'll take it to him next week." "Yes, father," Atemu said quietly. For the next week, Atemu looked after the pigeon. The pigeon started to fly again. Every morning, it flew to the roof where Atemu slept and cooed to him. Atemu was very happy to have a new pigeon friend. "I don't want you to go home," he said to it quietly.

اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. لقد صنع لها طاولة عالية لا تستطيع القطة القفز عليها.

وأعطاه الماء والحبوب وتحدث معها. وكانت الحمامة تهدل له بسعادة.

ذهب والد أتيمو إلى المدينة. وبعد ثلاثة أيام عاد إلى المنزل.

قال أتيمو "هل تحدثت مع الكاتب؟". قال والده: "نعم. كانت الرسالة موجهة إلى تاجر مجوهرات في المدينة،

السيد آخون. أخذت له الرسالة وكان سعيدًا جدًا! لقد كان طلبًا للكثير من المجوهرات الذهبية من العاصمة. لقد

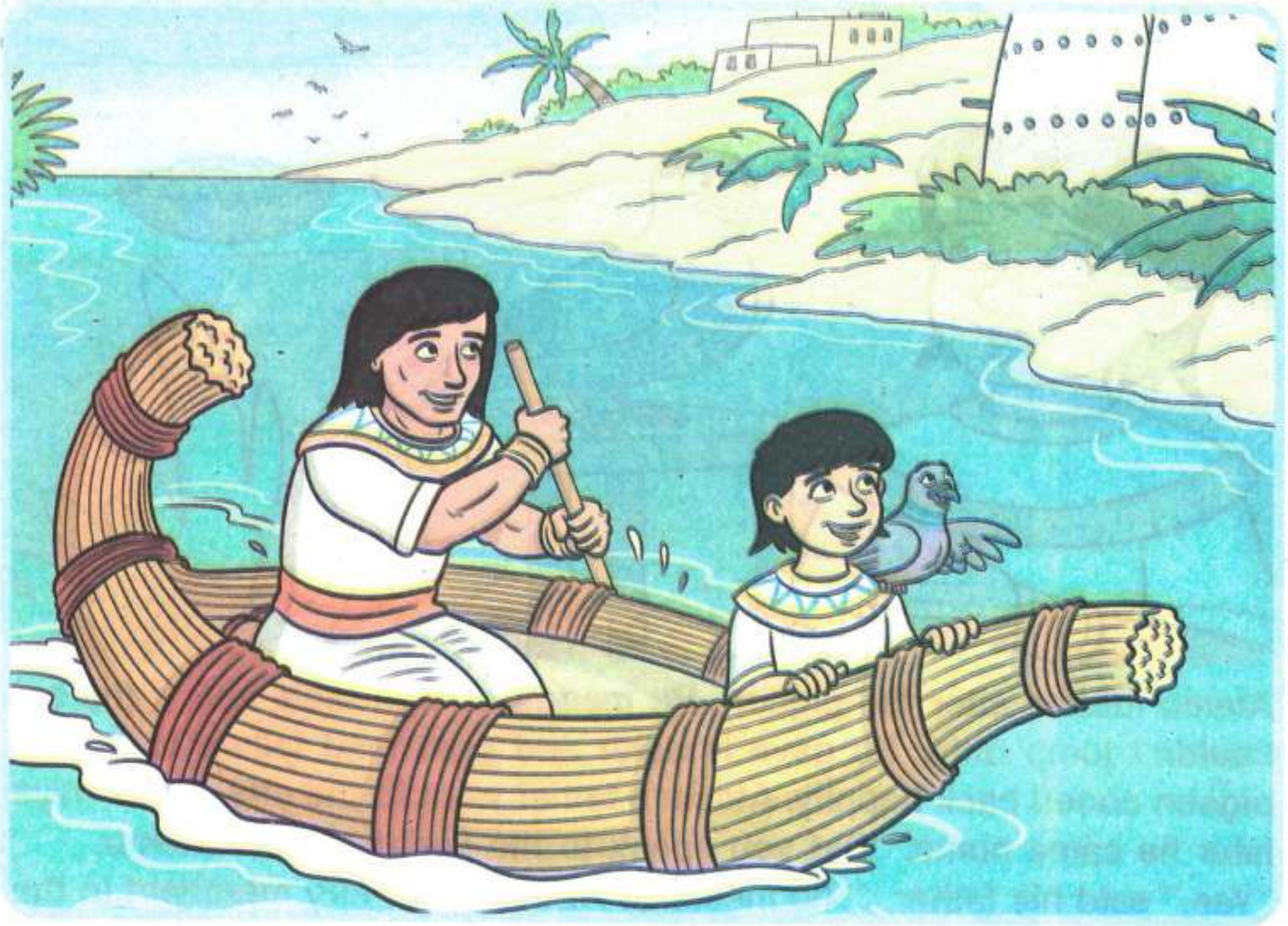
كان الأمر مهمًا للغاية بالنسبة له. يريد السيد آخون أيضًا حمامته. سنأخذها إليه الأسبوع المقبل."

قال أتيمو بهدوء: "نعم يا أبي." وعلى مدار الأسبوع التالي، اعتنى أتيمو بالحمامة. بدأت الحمامة تطير مرة أخرى.

وكل صباح كانت تطير إلى السطح حيث ينام أتيمو وتهدل له. كان أتيمو سعيدًا للغاية بوجود الحمامة صديقه

الجديدة. قال لها بهدوء: "لا أريدك أن تعودى إلى المنزل."





The next Sunday, Atemu and his father got into their boat to go to the city. The pigeon sat on Atemu's shoulder.

Atemu was excited because it was his first trip to the city, but he was also sad. It was his last day with the pigeon.

But he forgot about that when he saw the houses of the city. There were so many and some of the houses were very big! Some houses had white **domes** with many small holes in the yard or on the roof.

"What are they?" asked Atemu.

"Those are **dovecotes**," said Atemu's father. "Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons."

وفي يوم الأحد التالي، ركب أتيمو ووالده قاربهم للذهاب إلى المدينة. جلست الحمامة على كتف أتيمو. كان أتيمو متحمساً لأنها كانت رحلته الأولى إلى المدينة، لكنه كان حزيناً أيضاً. كان يومه الأخير مع الحمامة. لكنه نسي ذلك عندما رأى بيوت المدينة. كان هناك الكثير وكانت بعض المنازل كبيرة جداً! وكان لبعض المنازل قباب بيضاء بها العديد من الثقوب الصغيرة في الفناء أو على السطح.

سأل أتيمو "ما هذا؟"

قال والد أتيمو "تلك هي أبراج الحمام. أبراج الحمام هي بيوت خاصة للحمام."





# Activities

## 1 Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Atemu watched the pigeon while he cleaned fruits.
2. Nedjem ran and picked up the cat.
3. The pigeon had a hurt leg.
4. There was a very small box in the pigeon's leg.
5. The bird was a carrier falcon.
6. Atemu's father took the message to the scribe.
7. Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons.

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

## 2 Read and complete the following.

1. Important people in the city keep .....
2. The bird's ..... was hurt.
3. The bird was a ..... pigeon.
4. The message was for a jewelry ..... in the city.
5. Some houses had white .....
6. .... are special houses for pigeons.
7. Atemu was ..... because it was his first trip to the city.

## 3 Answer the following questions.

1. Why did Atemu's father take the message to the scribe? .....
2. How did Atemu look after the pigeon? .....
3. Why was the message important for Mr Akhon? .....
4. Why would Atemu and his father take the pigeon to Mr Akhon? .....
5. Why couldn't the bird fly? .....
6. What did the bird have on its leg? .....
7. What kind of bird was it? .....
8. Who was Mr Akhon? .....



## Part (3)

## The End



Finally, they arrived at a large house. "We're here!" Atemu's father said. A smiling man came to meet them. He was wearing a lot of jewelry. Atemu knew it was the merchant.

"Welcome to my home!" Mr Akhon said. "Thank you so much for finding my message. It was from my most important customer. And thanks for looking after my pigeon. Her name is **Amethyst** – because her feathers are the same color as these purple stones. She is my best bird!"

"She was hurt," said Atemu.

"I see," said the merchant. "Can she fly now?"

"Yes," said Atemu. "She's much better."

"Come with me then. I'll show you where she lives."

وأخيراً وصلوا إلى منزل كبير. قال والد أتيمو "ها قد وصلنا!".  
جاء رجل مبتسم لمقابلتهم. كان يرتدي الكثير من المجوهرات. عرف أتيمو أنه التاجر.  
قال السيد آخون "أهلاً وسهلاً بكم في منزلي! شكراً جزيلاً لك على العثور على رسالتي. لقد كانت الرسالة من أهم عميل لدي. وشكراً على رعايتك لحمامتي. اسمها أميثست – لأن ريشها من نفس لون هذه الحجارة الأرجوانية. إنها أفضل الطيور لدي!"

قال أتيمو: "لقد كانت مُصابة".

قال التاجر: "أفهم ذلك. هل يمكنها الطيران الآن؟"

قال أتيمو: "نعم. إنها أفضل بكثير."

"تعالوا معي إذن. سأريكم أين تعيش."





Atemu and his father followed Mr Akhon into his yard. At one side, there were three tall dovecotes. "My birds will come home soon," the merchant said.

"How many do you have?" said Atemu.

"Oh, a lot." said Mr Akhon.

"They have a lot of babies, so I don't know exactly."

Atemu looked into a dovecote. He could see some baby birds. "They're so cute!" Atemu said.

"It's time to go, son," said Atemu's father. "Say goodbye to the bird."

تبع أتيمو ووالده السيد آخون إلى فناء منزله. على أحد الجوانب، كان هناك ثلاثة أبراج حمام طويلة.

قال التاجر: "ستعود طيوري إلى المنزل قريباً".

قال أتيمو "كم لديك؟".

قال السيد آخون "أوه، الكثير".

"لديهم الكثير من الصغار، لذلك لا أعرف بالضبط."

نظر أتيمو إلى أحد أبراج الحمام. واستطاع رؤية بعض الطيور الصغيرة. قال أتيمو "إنها لطيفة جداً!".

قال والد أتيمو: "حان وقت الرحيل يا بني، قل وداعاً للطائر."





"Goodbye Amethyst," said Atemu, softly. He touched her purple feathers, and she cooed. He was very sad, but he tried to smile. The merchant was a kind man. He spoke to Atemu.

"You say Amethyst got well again, but she didn't fly home."

"Yes" said Atemu. "Well, I think she'll be happy to stay with you now."

"Oh wow!" said Atemu. "Thank you so much." He looked at Amethyst, and she jumped onto his shoulder.

"She'll need a small house," said Mr Akhon.

"I can make one!" said Atemu. "I'm learning to be a carpenter."

"I'll help you," said his dad.

قال أتيمو بهدوء: "وداعاً يا أميثست". لمس ريشها الأرجواني، فهدلت. كان حزيناً جداً، لكنه حاول أن يبتسم. وكان التاجر رجلاً طيباً. وتحدث إلى أتيمو. "أنت تقول أن أميثست تحسنت مرة أخرى، لكنها لم تعد إلى المنزل." قال أتيمو "نعم".

قال السيد آخون "حسناً، أعتقد أنها ستكون سعيدة بالبقاء معك الآن." قال أتيمو "أوه واو! شكراً جزيلاً." نظر إلى أميثست، وقفزت على كتفه.

قال السيد آخون: "ستحتاج إلى منزل صغير".

قال أتيمو "أستطيع أن أصنع واحداً! أنا أتعلم أن أكون نجاراً".

قال والده: "سوف أساعدك".





On the boat home, Atemu's father said, "Mr Akhon is a very good man. He gave you his best bird!"

Atemu said, "Yes. How can I thank him?"

"You could ask the scribe to write a thank you letter for you," said his father.

"Good idea!" said Atemu "And Amethyst can take it to him!"

قال والد أتيمو وهما على متن القارب عائدين إلى المنزل. "السيد آخون رجل طيب للغاية. لقد أعطاك أفضل طائر

لديه!"

قال أتيمو. "نعم. كيف يمكنني أن أشكره؟"

قال والده: "يمكنك أن تطلب من الكاتب أن يكتب لك رسالة شكر."

قال أتيمو "فكره جيدة! ويمكن لأميثيست أن تأخذها إليه!"





# Activities

1

Read and write T (True) or F (False).

1. Atemu and his father went to the city by car.
2. Atemu was sad because it was the last day with the pigeon.
3. Some of the houses were very small.
4. Dovecotes are special houses for pigeons.
5. Mr Akhon didn't thank Atemu.
6. The message was from an important customer.
7. Atemu was happy to take the pigeon home.

☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐  
☐

2

Read and complete the following.

1. Mr Akhon was wearing a lot of .....
2. The pigeon's name was ..... because she had purple feathers.
3. Mr Akhon's pigeons had a lot of cute .....
4. Mr Akhon told Atemu to make a ..... for the pigeon.
5. The baby birds were so .....
6. The merchant was a ..... man.
7. The pigeon jumped on Atemu's .....

3

Answer the following questions.

1. Why did Mr Akhon say thank you to Atemu? .....
2. Why did Mr Akhon give Atemu the pigeon? .....
3. Why did Atemu's father say Mr Akhon was a good man? .....
4. What was Mr Akhon wearing? .....
5. What's the pigeon's name? .....
6. What did Mr Akhon show Atemu and his father? .....
7. What would Atemu make for the pigeon? .....
8. How could Atemu thank Mr Akhon? .....



# Activities on Review (4)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Next month, Nadia is going on a .....  
a) journey      b) trip      c) tour      d) voyage
- She's going to see the birds and animals which live near the .....  
a) hill      b) water      c) mountain      d) cliff
- They'll travel along the river in small .....  
a) ships      b) buses      c) planes      d) boats
- We hope to see lizards and .....  
a) birds      b) animals      c) turtles      d) fish

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Eco-tourism is more ..... than traditional tourism.  
a) simple      b) easy      c) dangerous      d) sustainable
- Animals need safe places to find .....  
a) food      b) babies      c) sugar      d) flour
- My neighbor has always been ..... to us. We like him.  
a) unkind      b) cruel      c) kind      d) angry

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**must - well - mustn't - eco-tourism**

I love going on vacation, but I think 1) ..... is a more sustainable way to travel. We learned about it in geography today and our teacher explained it really 2) ..... For example, you 3) ..... throw litter on beaches because this can make animals sick. I love watching birds and other animals in their natural habits.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once upon a time, there was a little red hen who really liked to work. Every day she planted seeds in her beautiful garden, and waited for her plants to grow. She had three great friends: a mouse, a cat, and a dog, but all three of them were very lazy! One day, the little red hen was really tired, so she asked the mouse, the cat, and the dog to help her plant some wheat. They all said "No!" She decided to bake a big chocolate cake.



No one wanted to help her bake the cake, but they wanted to eat it with the hen! "Can we help you eat the cake, please, Hen?" but the hen said, "As you plant, you shall collect."

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The hen liked to .....  
a) play                      b) sleep                      c) work                      d) sing
- The underlined pronoun "she" refers to the .....  
a) dog                      b) hen                      c) mouse                      d) cat

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What do we learn from the story? .....
- What did the hen plant in her garden? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- family - my - I - with - visiting - this - place - love - .  
.....
- distances - Migrating - long - fly - very - birds - .  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- If she ..... (feel) thirsty, she will drink some water.
- I went to the sports center yesterday to ..... (played) volleyball.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

- why do the old people use a multi-grip
- my uncle keeps pigeons on his roof

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about "A habitat":**

**Guiding elements:**

- What is a habitat? - How many types of habitats are there in Egypt?

.....  
.....

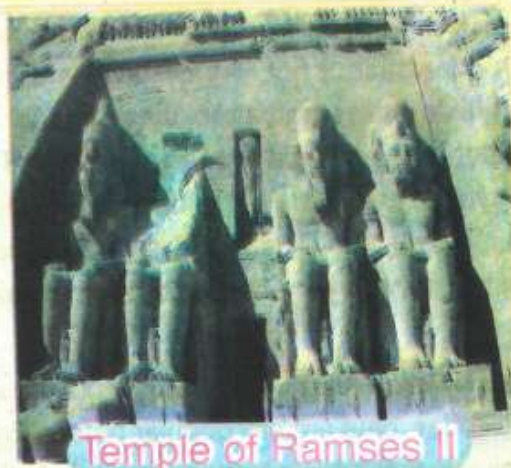


# TERM (2) PROJECT

## Listen and read.

استمع واقرأ.

Ramses II was a great Egyptian King. When he was very young, his father Sethi became the Pharaoh of Egypt. Later on, when he was around 10, young Ramses helped his father rule the country.



Temple of Ramses II

By the time he was 20 years old, Ramses was a great soldier. In 1290 BCE, he became Pharaoh and leader of the Egyptian armies. He won many battles and every time he won, Ancient Egypt got more land and became bigger and more powerful.

One of the most famous battles was the Battle of Kadesh in 1279 BCE. Ramses won and became a hero. However, sixteen years later, Ramses made peace with his Hittite neighbors. He was the first ruler ever to sign a written peace treaty.

Ramses liked building splendid monuments. His most famous temple is the one at Abu Simbel, where you can see four enormous statues of him at the entrance.

Ramses II lived to be about 90 years old. When he died around 1233 BCE, he was first buried in the Valley of the Kings, but today Ramses's Mummy is in the National Museum of Egyptian Civilization.

كان رمسيس الثاني ملكاً مصرياً عظيماً. عندما كان صغيراً جداً، أصبح والده سيتي فرعون مصر. لاحقاً، عندما كان عمره حوالي ١٠ سنوات، ساعد رمسيس الشاب والده في حكم البلد. وقبل بلوغه سن العشرين، كان رمسيس جندياً رائقاً. في ١٢٩٠ قبل الميلاد، أصبح فرعون وقائد الجيوش المصرية. لقد فاز بالعديد من المعارك، وفي كل مرة يفوز بها، كانت مصر القديمة تحصل على المزيد من الأراضي وأصبحت أكبر وأكثر قوة. واحدة من المعارك الأكثر شهرة كانت معركة قادش في ١٢٧٩ قبل الميلاد. فاز رمسيس وأصبح بطلاً. ومع ذلك، بعد ستة عشر عاماً، أقام رمسيس السلام مع جيرانه الحيثيين. كان أول حاكم على الإطلاق يوقع على معاهدة سلام مكتوبة. أحب رمسيس بناء الآثار الرائعة. معبدته الأكثر شهرة هو معبد أبو سمبل، حيث يمكنك رؤية أربعة تماثيل هائلة له عند المدخل. عاش رمسيس الثاني تقريباً لسن ٩٠ عاماً. عندما توفي حوالي عام ١٢٣٣ قبل الميلاد، تم دفنه لأول مرة في وادي الملوك، لكن مومياء رمسيس اليوم موجودة في المتحف القومي للحضارة المصرية.



# Listening Texts

## Unit (7)

### Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

We have a hot, dry climate here in Egypt, so artifacts aren't damaged by cold and wet weather. This helps to preserve them. The Ancient Egyptians also knew that certain materials could last a long time. That's why they built the Pyramids with granite, a very hard and durable stone.

### Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Today, cats are still popular pets in Egypt. Other animals that people keep today include turtles, fish, and birds, which are much smaller and easier to look after than baboons and crocodiles. I adore cats.

### Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The Ancient Egyptians used iron for small items, like jewelry. Copper and bronze were common metals for tools because they were easier to find. But later on, iron agricultural tools and weapons began to appear. This was the result of the Ancient Egyptians getting more iron through trade with other countries.

### Activities on Unit (7)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries, and metal was one thing they traded. They first found metal in rocks. Metal was harder than rocks. They could melt it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and weapons.

## Unit (8)

### Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Fares and Yaseen are cousins. They visited their grandma on the weekend. They found a box of old toys at grandma's house. There was an action figure and a train set. Fares loved playing with a train set when he was younger. Yaseen didn't have a train set, but his sister had a doll's house. They both played with it.

### Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

When Amina was little, she really liked games that used a lot of imagination. She was very good at making up stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.

### Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Ali was shopping with his parents at the market. He saw a stall that sold toys. A man showed him how a train moved. Ali thought the toys were amazing. Ali's dad came to see the toys, too. He liked the train, so he bought it. He said Ali could play with it.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new.

### Activities on Unit (8)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

When I was younger, I had a box of toys. There was an action figure. I loved playing with it. I made up lots of games for my action figures. I also had rollerblades. I had a go on them. My sister had a doll's house. She liked playing with it. I played board games with my brother, but he usually beat me.



## Listening Texts

### February Test

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Cats are popular pets around the world. They are usually friendly. They are independent animals. They have sharp claws and teeth. They use them when they are scared. Cats have soft fur which is nice to touch.

#### Unit (9)

##### Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the market with his son and a donkey. The setting is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long journey.

##### Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My name's Tom. I'm 11 years old and I'm from the USA. My favorite things are space, animals, and the color blue. What are your favorite things? Please email back to tell me!

My email address is tom@beachnet.usa.

##### Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Once upon a time there was once a boy who looked after some sheep. The boy was bored. One day, he played a trick on the villagers. He shouted "Wolf"! The villagers came up the hill to save the sheep. When they went to the sheep, there was no wolf. It was a joke.

##### Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct from a, b, c or d.

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

##### Activities on Unit (9)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Yesterday, I was on the beach near my house. It was morning and it was sunny. I was walking with my friend when we saw a big whale. We were

scared.

### Activities on Review (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Playing is good for us in lots of different ways. When we play, we feel happy. We also learn about the world and ourselves. When we play, we learn to solve problems and make friends.

#### Unit (10)

##### Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

"The early bird catches the worm." This proverb has more than one meaning. It tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something. Finally, proverbs teach us a lot of things.

##### Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Hi, I'm Adam. I love visiting the desert with my family. We went last year, and in the evenings, we saw lots of wildlife when the sun went down. More animals live on the sand than you might think. This year we'll stay outside and cook meals under the stars, so we must bring a tent. Then we'll walk in small groups to see the wildlife around us.

##### Lesson (3)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Some birds fly very long distances, making the same journey year after year. Even young birds that migrate for the first time seem to know how to get to the place they need to be. How do these birds know where to go? They might use the sun, the stars, or the things they can see on the way. Scientists have spent a long time trying to find out how they do this!

##### Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.



### Activities on Unit (10)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

We can all think about things we can do to protect habitats. For example, we mustn't waste water or drop litter. We can recycle paper, so people don't cut down trees. We can also plant flowers and plants, because these are great for birds and insects.

### March Test

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe sharks.

### Unit (11)

#### Lesson (1)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

My neighbor has always been kind to us. She used to help my mom look after me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go shopping. So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the stores and get it. I like to help her.

#### Lesson (2)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

We're doing a wildlife project at school, and my teacher installed two nature cameras in the forest. We're using them to film wildlife. He put one on the ground to film animals at night. He put the other in a tree to film birds during the day. Then we recorded how many animals and birds we see, and what they're doing.

#### Lesson (3 A)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Rawan first started volunteering when she was ten years old. She helps out in the summer group by helping children learn reading. She likes helping children because they are very important to our future. Her advice for teenagers is be patient and try to improve their skills.

### Lesson (3 B)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

The older brother planted a seed, and soon a thick, tall plant grew up and up to the moon. The brother climbed up the plant to look for his reward. But when he reached the moon, the plant disappeared. He was alone, and he couldn't go back.

### Lessons (4 & 5)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Fareeda started preparatory school in 2006. Here, she participated in her first volunteer event. She and a team of volunteers did a beach clean-up. In 2010, she organized her first charity event delivering food boxes to families in the community.

### Activities on Unit (11)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

I love reading, so I decided to help out in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by reading to the children. I love reading stories with the younger children, and they like it too. We're starting up a project where they think of their own stories next week. I'm looking forward to that.

### Activities on Review (4)

- Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things. We hope to see lizards and turtles, as well as lots of interesting plants. However, we mustn't swim because there might be crocodiles!



# AL-BAHIER CONNECT 6

## Final Revision

Second Term



Primary

6



# Language Focus

## The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

### Form التكوين

- The second form of the verb.

التصريف الثاني للفعل.

### Usage الاستخدام

- We use the **Past Simple Tense** to express finished actions in the past.

نستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن أحداث انتهت في الماضي.

### 1 Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

نضيف (d, ed, ied) إلى الفعل المنتظم.

love → loved

like → liked

1 إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (e) يُضاف (d) فقط.

try → tried

study → studied

2 إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف ساكن نحذف (y) ثم نضيف (ied).

play → played

stay → stayed

3 إذا كان الفعل ينتهي بـ (y) ويسبقه حرف متحرك يتم إضافة (ed) للفعل.

drop → dropped

stop → stopped

4 إذا انتهى الفعل بحرف ساكن مسبقاً بحرف متحرك واحد تُضاعف الحرف الأخير.

### 2 Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

become → became

keep → kept

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

yesterday	أمس	last (year / .....)	(العام / ..... / الماضي)
ago	منذ	in the past	في الماضي
Once	ذات مرة	in 2015	في عام (2015) أي تاريخ ماضي

e.g. I visited my grandmother yesterday.

Ali played with his cousin last Saturday.

### Negative النفي

**Subject (الفاعل) + didn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)**

e.g. Rats didn't eat the grain.

- I didn't grow up in Cairo.



## Language

### Question السؤال

#### (Yes / No) question:

السؤال بـ "هل":

**Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

- e.g. **Did** the Ancient Egyptians only **keep** cats as pets?  
- Yes, they did. - No, they didn't.

#### Wh-question:

السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":

**Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?**

- e.g. **What** did they **feed** their cats?  
**Where** did he **grow** up?

### Verb to "be" in the past

#### Form التكوين

**(I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد) + was .....**

- e.g. I **was** at school yesterday.

**(You / We / They / اسم جمع) + were .....**

- e.g. They **were** at school yesterday.

#### Negative النفي

**Subject + (wasn't / weren't) + باقي الجملة**

- e.g. I **wasn't** a student at the local school.  
They **weren't** popular pets.

### Question السؤال

#### (Yes / No) question:

السؤال بـ "هل":

**(Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

- e.g. **Were** there a lot of mummies?  
- Yes, there were. - No, there weren't.

#### Wh-question:

السؤال بـ "كلمة استفهام":

**Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?**

- e.g. **Which** **was** their favorite animal?



## Prepositions of place

حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان

نستخدم حروف الجر الخاصة بالمكان لنخبر عن مكان الأشياء:

e.g. The Ancient Egyptians first found metal **in** the rocks.They could hunt and grow things **on** the land.

☀ Here are some common prepositions of place:

إليك بعض حروف جر المكان الشائعة:



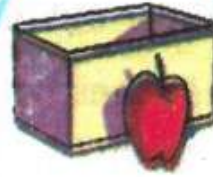
on

على



in

في



in front of

أمام



between

بين



under

تحت



next to

بجوار



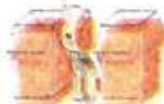
behind

خلف

☀ To ask about places:

للسؤال عن الأماكن:

Where .....? (أين .....؟)

e.g. Where is the cat?  
- It's **on** the box.e.g. Where is the cat?  
- It's **in front of** the box.e.g. Where is the cat?  
- It's **between** the boxes.



# Activities

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Did you ..... a nice weekend?  
a) have                      b) has                      c) had                      d) having
2. I ..... to Al-Azhar Park with my friends yesterday.  
a) go                      b) went                      c) goes                      d) going
3. What ..... you do last week?  
a) does                      b) do                      c) doing                      d) did
4. We ..... a picnic last week.  
a) have                      b) has                      c) had                      d) having
5. I ..... at the zoo yesterday.  
a) am                      b) have                      c) was                      d) is
6. The Ancient Egyptians ..... their pets.  
a) love                      b) loved                      c) loves                      d) loving
7. Where did you ..... up?  
a) grow                      b) grows                      c) grown                      d) grew
8. He ..... maths at university two years ago.  
a) studies                      b) study                      c) studied                      d) is studying
9. Rats didn't ..... the grain.  
a) ate                      b) eat                      c) eats                      d) eating
10. The chair is in ..... of the box.  
a) next                      b) near                      c) front                      d) behind
11. .... is the boy? - In the kitchen.  
a) Where                      b) Why                      c) What                      d) How
12. The girl is ..... the curtain.  
a) on                      b) in                      c) behind                      d) next

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They ..... (didn't) popular pets.
2. Did they ..... (kept) cats as pets?
3. Where did she ..... (grew) up?



4. I ..... (stay) in bed last night.
5. The apple is ..... (behind) to the box.
6. She didn't ..... (arrived) on time.
7. They ..... (buy) a new car last month.
8. She ..... (isn't) at school last week.
9. The teacher's desk is ..... (under) the board and the plant.
10. They ..... (find) silver in the tomb last year.
11. We ..... (not) like cats when we were young.
12. Ali didn't ..... (traveled) to Aswan last vacation.
13. The tombs ..... (be) full of golden artifacts.
14. .... (Do) the boys arrive in time yesterday?
15. Where did you ..... (grows) up?

### 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. did - find - they - silver - Where - ?  
.....
2. you - the - Did - understand - exercise - ?  
.....
3. She - week - wasn't - school - last - at - .  
.....
4. board - is - The - under - clock - the - .  
.....
5. Midas - helped - goat - King - the - .  
.....
6. What - there - do - you - did - ?  
.....
7. represented - The - wisdom - ibis - falcons - and - .  
.....
8. went - a - boat - We - ride - on - .  
.....



## Intensifiers

### المقويات - المعززات

- We use **intensifiers** to give a stronger meaning to **adjectives** and **verbs**.

نستخدم المقويات لإعطاء معنى أقوى للصفات والأفعال.

1 لتقوية الصفة نستخدم (really , very و so) قبل الصفة.

e.g. I was **really / very** good at hiding.

Some skipping games are **so** difficult.

2 لتقوية الفعل نستخدم (really) قبل الفعل.

e.g. I **really** liked playing hopscotch.

3 نستخدم (at all) مع الجمل المنفية وتأتي في نهاية الجملة.

e.g. He **didn't** like skipping **at all**!

4 نستخدم (quite) لجعل الصفة أقل قوة.

e.g. She was **quite** good at football.

### verb + (verb + ing)

Some verbs are followed by **verb + ing**:

بعض الأفعال يتبعها (فعل + ing):

like	يحب	continue	يستمر في	love	يحب
finish	ينتهي	enjoy	يستمتع بـ	imagine	يتخيل
hate	يكره	stop	يتوقف عن	prefer	يفضل

e.g. I **enjoy looking** at the market stalls.

I **stopped playing** with my train set a few years ago.



# Activities



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I ..... liked playing with my cuddly toys.  
a) really      b) very      c) much      d) so
2. This book is not funny .....  
a) really      b) so      c) at all      d) quite
3. Omar is ..... good at football. He always beats me.  
a) quite      b) very      c) at all      d) never
4. Some skipping games are ..... difficult. I can't play them.  
a) so      b) many      c) at all      d) lot
5. I ..... enjoyed playing marbles with my friends.  
a) very      b) so      c) really      d) at all
6. I don't like playing tennis .....  
a) so      b) at all      c) very      d) quite
7. Sarah imagined ..... in a plane.  
a) fly      b) flies      c) to fly      d) flying
8. I prefer ..... with my new toys.  
a) playing      b) to play      c) play      d) played
9. My sister enjoys ..... at the market stalls.  
a) look      b) looks      c) looking      d) to look
10. Did you finish ..... your homework?  
a) do      b) doing      c) to do      d) did
11. You should stop ..... at your sister.  
a) shout      b) shouted      c) shouting      d) to shout
12. I like ..... up stories.  
a) making      b) makes      c) made      d) to make



Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. They finished ..... (paint) the posters.
2. I really enjoyed ..... (ride) my bike.
3. Nour likes ..... (play) outside.



## Language

4. Adam imagined ..... (fly) in a rocket.
5. I ..... (very) liked playing hopscotch.
6. Sarah prefers ..... (draw) flowers.
7. I love ..... (read) adventure stories.
8. People should stop ..... (throw) rubbish in the street.
9. I was ..... (all) good at football.
10. He didn't like running ..... (very).
11. Ali is ..... (at all) good at reading. He reads five books a week.
12. I don't enjoy playing outside ..... (so).
13. He didn't like ..... (skip).
14. I think skipping is ..... (very) good, but I prefer hide and seek.
15. My sister speaks French ..... (quite) well. She speaks like French.

**3**

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. board - I - really - playing - like - games - .  
.....
2. didn't - Asser - train - at all - sets - like - .  
.....
3. quite - Skateboarding - good - is - .  
.....
4. Amina - doing - What - like - did - ?  
.....
5. was - good - I - very - making up - at - stories - .  
.....
6. he - reading - Does - enjoy - books - adventure - ?  
.....



## The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

### Usage الاستخدام

- We use **the past continuous** in stories to say what was happening at a particular time in the past.

نستخدم الماضي المستمر في القصص لنقول ما كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

e.g. Yesterday afternoon, John **was walking** his dog.

e.g. I **was reading** a book at 6 pm yesterday.

### Form التكوين

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **was** + (v + ing).  
You / We / They / اسم جمع + **were** + (v + ing).

- I **was doing** my homework yesterday evening.
- We **were playing** computer games.

### Negative النفي

I / He / She / It / اسم مفرد + **wasn't** + (v + ing).  
You / We / They / اسم جمع + **weren't** + (v + ing).

- He **was not watching** TV.
- They **weren't riding** their bikes.

لاحظ الاختصارات الآتية:

was not → wasn't

were not → weren't

### Question السؤال

### Yes/No question

**Was** + (I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + (v + ing)?  
**Were** + (you / we / they / اسم جمع) + (v + ing)?

- |                      |                   |                     |
|----------------------|-------------------|---------------------|
| - Was Ali swimming?  | - Yes, he was.    | - No, he wasn't.    |
| - Were they surfing? | - Yes, they were. | - No, they weren't. |



## Language

### Wh- question

Q.W + was + (I / he / she / it / اسم مفرد) + (v + ing)?

Q.W + were + (you / we / they / اسم جمع)

- What **was** she **doing**? - She **was** **eating**.
- What **were** they **doing**? - They **were** **playing** on the beach.

### Keywords الكلمات الدالة

at (5) yesterday	في الساعة (الخامسة) أمس	yesterday evening	مساءً أمس
yesterday morning	صباح أمس	when	عندما

- We can also use **the past continuous** with **when** and the past simple to show when one action interrupted another in the past:

يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضي المستمر مع الرابط **when** والماضي البسيط لبيان أن حدث ما قطع حدث آخر في الماضي:

ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط + When

- **When** we **saw** a little house, we **were walking** along the path.

ماضي بسيط + when + ماضي مستمر

- I **was watching** TV **when** you **called** me.

## Sequencing adverbs

### ظروف التسلسل

**We use sequencing adverbs to say when things happen. They help us to understand the order of events. This makes the text easier to follow.**

نستخدم ظروف التسلسل لنقول متى تحدث الأشياء. فهي تساعدنا في فهم ترتيب الأحداث. وهذا يجعل النص أسهل للمتابعة.

First أولاً    Next التالي    Then ثم    After that بعد ذلك    Finally أخيرًا / في النهاية

- **Notes to help you to write a story using sequencing adverbs.**

- **First**, plan your story, and decide what it will be about.

أولاً، خطط لقصتك، وقرر ما الذي ستتناوله.

- **Next**, write a first draft of your story.

بعد ذلك، اكتب المسودة الأولى لقصتك.

- **After that**, check and correct your spelling and grammar.

بعد ذلك، قم بالتدقيق والتصحيح الإملائي والنحوي.

- **Finally**, share it with friends and enjoy!

وأخيراً، قم بمشاركتها مع الأصدقاء واستمتع!



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Dina ..... her homework when she got a text message.  
a) is doing      b) was doing      c) will do      d) does
2. They were playing in the park when they ..... a note.  
a) find      b) finds      c) found      d) have found
3. I ..... a book when my dad came home.  
a) am reading      b) read      c) was reading      d) reads
4. What were you ..... ?  
a) do      b) does      c) doing      d) did
5. They ..... computer games when their brother arrived.  
a) were playing      b) play      c) are playing      d) will play
6. He was playing the piano when his mom ..... home.  
a) arrive      b) arrived      c) arrives      d) arriving
7. They ..... to music when the man shouted.  
a) are listening      b) will listen      c) were listening      d) listen
8. Were you ..... for your exam when the car stopped outside?  
a) study      b) studying      c) studied      d) studies
9. We ..... in the park when we heard a bang.  
a) were playing      b) are playing      c) play      d) will play
10. Ayman ..... the bike when the phone rang.  
a) is riding      b) rides      c) was riding      d) rode
11. Hazem was watching a match when his dad ..... him.  
a) phone      b) phoned      c) was phoning      d) phones
12. Dad was reading the newspaper ..... Lina came.  
a) when      b) while      c) what      d) why

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Yesterday afternoon, John ..... (walk) his dog.
2. Hazem ..... (watch) a football match when his team scored a goal.
3. Dad was reading a newspaper when Lina ..... (come).



## Language

4. I ..... (am) reading a story when my mom came home.
5. Ahmed was riding a bike when the phone ..... (ring).
6. .... (Are) you looking at your phone when I saw you in the street?
7. I wasn't ..... (watch) TV when you called me.
8. We ..... (walk) along the path when we saw a little house.
9. We ..... (travel) to the city when Grandma phoned us.
10. I was going home from school when I ..... (see) Ali.
11. Hany and Ali ..... (walk) to the school yesterday at 7:30 am.
12. What were you doing when I ..... (phone) you?
13. We were watching TV ..... (where) the doorbell rang.
14. My sister ..... (clean) her room when my mom came.
15. When my dad ..... (come), I was doing my homework.

**3**

**Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. playing - park - in - We - the - were - .  
.....
2. to - listening - Were - music - they - ?  
.....
3. What - doing - were - you - ?  
.....
4. was - games - playing - computer - Ghada - .  
.....
5. John - dog - walking - was - his - the park - in - .  
.....
6. watching - match - was - football - Hatem - a - .  
.....
7. reading - came - when - I - was - my dad - a book - .  
.....
8. Fatima - her - doing - Was - homework - ?  
.....



## (must / mustn't)

يجب أن / يجب ألا

## Form التكوين

Subject + must / mustn't + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. We **must** respect nature.We **mustn't** leave trash in the desert.

## Usage الاستخدام

- We use "**must**" when we talk about something that we have to do or that is important to do. نستخدم "must" عند الحديث عن شيء يجب أن نقوم به أو من المهم أن نقوم به.

e.g. We **must** bring a tent.

- We use "**mustn't**" when we are not allowed to do something. نستخدم "mustn't" عندما يكون غير مسموح لنا القيام بشيء ما.

e.g. We **mustn't** swim because there might be crocodiles!

## (If) First Conditional

إذا / لو "الحالة الشرطية الأولى"

## Form التكوين

If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf.) ...

e.g. If people **learn** more about the environment, they **will want** to protect it.

Subject + will + inf. + if + subject + present simple

e.g. I **will buy** a car if I **have** a lot of money.

## Usage الاستخدام

- We use the **first conditional** to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future. نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

e.g. If tourists **stay** in simple accommodation, there **won't be** so many big hotels.

**Note:** will = 'll      will not = won't

e.g. If I **am** hungry, I'll **eat** a snack.If he **doesn't leave** now, he **won't catch** the bus.



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. You ..... respect nature.  
a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) don't have to                      d) shouldn't
2. You ..... scare birds or animals.  
a) must                      b) should                      c) have to                      d) mustn't
3. You ..... leave trash in the desert.  
a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) have to                      d) should
4. If I have an important exam, I ..... study for it.  
a) would                      b) could                      c) will                      d) might
5. If you ..... to bed late tonight, you won't get up early tomorrow.  
a) go                      b) goes                      c) went                      d) was going
6. If you learn to bake, you ..... save a lot of money.  
a) won't                      b) shouldn't                      c) will                      d) mustn't
7. You ..... walk to school today because there are no buses.  
a) shouldn't                      b) mustn't                      c) don't have to                      d) must
8. You ..... walk in the desert when it's hot.  
a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) should                      d) have to
9. If I am hungry, I ..... a snack.  
a) will eat                      b) could eat                      c) would eat                      d) might eat
10. When we go camping, we ..... take a tent with us.  
a) must                      b) mustn't                      c) shouldn't                      d) couldn't
11. You mustn't ..... in the lake.  
a) swims                      b) swam                      c) swim                      d) swimming
12. If it ..... sunny, we'll go to the beach.  
a) is                      b) be                      c) will be                      d) was

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. You ..... (must) leave trash in the desert.
2. You must ..... (bringing) a tent.
3. You ..... (must) scare the birds or animals.



4. You ..... (mustn't) be careful in the natural environment.
5. If he ..... (didn't) leave now, he won't catch the bus.
6. If she feels thirsty, she ..... (would) drink some water.
7. If we ..... (went) to El Agami beach, we will swim in the sea.
8. If you go to bed late, you ..... (don't) get up early tomorrow.
9. You mustn't ..... (walking) in the desert when it's hot.
10. You ..... (must) swim here because there might be crocodiles.
11. You must ..... (studies) hard to pass your exams.
12. We ..... (mustn't) listen carefully to our teachers.
13. If we burn fossil fuels, the air ..... (been) polluted.
14. If you ..... (doesn't) wear your coat, you will feel cold.
15. If it rains, you will not ..... (goes) outside.

### 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. mustn't - birds - animals - You - or - scare - .  
.....
2. in - trash - You - desert - leave - the - mustn't - .  
.....
3. If - hungry, - eat - he - will - a snack - he - is - .  
.....
4. thirsty - she - water, - drink - is - If - she - some - will - .  
.....
5. If - he - now, - he - catch - doesn't - the bus - leave - won't - .  
.....
6. mustn't - hot - it's - walk - You - the - in - desert - when - .  
.....
7. a - bring - must - We - tent - .  
.....
8. mustn't - your - forget - You - homework - .  
.....



## Infinitives of purpose

(to + inf.) (للتعبير عن الغرض)

نستخدم "المصدر + to" لبيان الغرض من القيام بالأشياء.

e.g. We wear gloves **to protect** our hands.

نستخدم أيضًا "المصدر + to" لكي نجيب عن الأسئلة التي تبدأ بـ "Why".

e.g. **Why** do you wear gloves on a beach clean-up? **To protect** my hands.

## Adverbs

الأحوال / الظروف

① **An Adverb** is a word that describes a verb.

(الحال / الظرف) هو كلمة تصف الفعل.

e.g. He waited **patiently**.

- They walked **quickly**.

### Form

يتكون (الحال / الظرف) بإضافة "ly" إلى معظم الصفات.

quick → quick**ly**

slow → slow**ly**

الصفات التي تنتهي بساكن وبعده "y" نحول "y" إلى "ily".

happy → happ**ily**

angry → angr**ily**

Adjective		Adverb		Adjective		Adverb	
beautiful	جميل	beautifully	بجمال	angry	غضبان	angrily	بغضب
quiet	هادئ	quietly	بهدهوء	happy	سعيد	happily	بسعادة
kind	عطوف	kindly	بعطف	patient	صبور	patiently	بصبر

③ **Adverb** normally comes after the verb.

الحال يأتي بعد الفعل.

e.g. He **shouted** **angrily**.

④ **Adverbs** can come before or after a verb and its object. The adverb can't come between the verb and its object.

يمكن أن تأتي الأحوال قبل أو بعد فعل ومفعوله. ولا يمكن أن تأتي بين الفعل ومفعوله.

e.g. She **quickly** **learned** the rules. (✓) - She **learned** **quickly** the rules. (✗)

⑤ **Some adverbs** are irregular.

بعض الأحوال غير منتظمة.

Adjective		Adverb	
good	جيد	well	بطريقة جيدة
fast	سريع	fast	بسرعة
hard	صعب / شاق	hard	بجد

e.g. He is a **fast** runner. He runs **fast**.



# Activities

## 1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Hoda isn't very ..... at basketball.  
a) good      b) well      c) quickly      d) lazily
2. Donia learned how to play chess .....  
a) quick      b) well      c) good      d) sad
3. My friend Sherif plays volleyball very .....  
a) good      b) bad      c) clever      d) well
4. Gameela ..... picked up the cat.  
a) gentle      b) bad      c) gently      d) slow
5. Nagwa and Lama played ..... in the park for an hour.  
a) happy      b) happily      c) sad      d) bad
6. Safia is using a mobile to ..... her friend.  
a) calling      b) calls      c) call      d) called
7. My daughter went to the club ..... meet her friends.  
a) for      b) on      c) to      d) at
8. Seif bought a pen to ..... with.  
a) write      b) wrote      c) written      d) writing
9. I listen to the news ..... know what's going on.  
a) in      b) on      c) at      d) to
10. I go to school to .....  
a) learning      b) learn      c) learnt      d) learns

## 2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I listen carefully to ..... (understood).
2. The tortoise walks ..... (slow).
3. She spoke ..... (gentle) to her guests.
4. They went to the library ..... (for) borrow books.
5. He runs ..... (quick).
6. I slept early to ..... (getting) up early.



## Language

7. She speaks ..... (loud).
8. I tidied my room to ..... (helped) my mother.
9. We speak ..... (quiet).
10. I study hard ..... (for) succeed.
11. She sat in the library ..... (quiet).
12. My dad painted our house ..... (good).
13. We use the camera ..... (for) take photos.
14. Heba plays the piano ..... (beautiful).
15. I use my key ..... (at) open the door.

### 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. to - a picture - Lama - the exhibition - painted - put - in - .  
.....
2. lemonade - to - They - the market - sell - make - in - .  
.....
3. by bus - her cousins - see - Farah - to - traveled - .  
.....
4. some candy - bought - the movie - to - We - during - eat - .  
.....
5. choose - something - to - We - support - had to - our community - .  
.....
6. his - quickly - Adam - meal - ate - friends - with - his - .  
.....
7. our charity - money to - Their - donated - kindly - cousins - .  
.....
8. shouting angrily - heard - I - two - people - today - the street - in - .  
.....



# Unit (7)

# Amazing artifacts

## Vocabulary

artifacts	قطع أثرية / مصنوعات يدوية	trade	تجارة / يتاجر
preserve	يحفظ	metal	معدن
durable	متين	weapon	سلاح
fascinating	رائع / جذاب / مذهل	economy	اقتصاد
granite	جرانيت	trip over	يطأ على / يدوس على
glass	زجاج	hug	يحتضن
clay	صلصال / طين / فخار	tears	دموع
gold	ذهب	stone	حجر
baboon	قرد البابون	iron	حديد
monkey	قرد	meteorite	حجر نيزكي
rat	فأر - جرذ	dagger	خنجر
crocodile	تمساح	precious	ثمين
hippo	فرس النهر	mine	منجم / يستخرج معادن
falcon	صقر	copper	نحاس
ibis	طائر أبو منجل	bronze	معدن البرونز
snake	ثعبان	craftsmen	حرفيين
grain	حبوب	mummify	يحنط
adore	يُحب بشدة / يعشق	statue	تمثال
wisdom	حكمة	melt	يذوب / ينصهر

## Pronunciation

bear	دُب	share	يُشارك	pair	زوج من
pear	كُمثرى	rare	نادر	hair	شعر
tear	يمزق	there	هناك	air	هواء
wear	يرتدى				

## Prepositions of place

in	في	under	تحت	between	بين
on	على	behind	خلف	next to	بجوار
in front of	أمام				



# Language

## The Past Simple Tense

زمن الماضي البسيط

### Form التكوين

#### - The second form of the verb.

يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل. (إضافة d, ed, ied للفعل المنتظم والفعل غير المنتظم يحفظ).

e.g. He **dropped** the glass.

- She **became** a teacher.

### Negative النفي

Subject (الفاعل) + **didn't** + inf. (مصدر الفعل)

e.g. Rats **didn't** eat the grain.

- I **didn't** grow up in Cairo.

### Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question: Did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

e.g. **Did** the Ancient Egyptians only **keep** cats as pets?

- Yes, they did.

- No, they didn't.

Wh-question: Q.W + did + subject (الفاعل) + inf. (مصدر الفعل) ?

e.g. **What** did they **feed** their cats?

## Verb to be in the past

### Form التكوين

Subject + (was / were) + باقي الجملة

e.g. There **was** a cat here.

### Negative النفي

Subject + (wasn't / weren't) + باقي الجملة

e.g. There **weren't** popular pets.

### Question السؤال

(Yes / No) question: (Was / Were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?

e.g. **Were** there a lot of mummies?

- Yes, there were.

- No, there weren't.

### Wh-question:

Q.W + (was / were) + subject + باقي الجملة ?

e.g. **Which** **was** their favorite animal?



# Activities on Unit (7)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved birds especially .....  
a) hens                      b) ducks                      c) falcons                      d) turkeys
2. Falcons and the ibis represented .....  
a) money                      b) wisdom                      c) happiness                      d) sadness
3. There are ..... of mummified ibises in Saqqara.  
a) tens                      b) hundreds                      c) a few                      d) thousands
4. These pets were also important in the .....  
a) afterlife                      b) before life                      c) at life                      d) behind life



## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. One of the most beautiful artifacts is Tutankhamun's .....  
a) mask                      b) shoes                      c) head                      d) leg
2. The mask is made of .....  
a) silver                      b) bronze                      c) copper                      d) gold
3. Under his chin is a ..... beard.  
a) fat                      b) thin                      c) big                      d) huge
4. There is also a ..... on the top of his head.  
a) bird                      b) cat                      c) snake                      d) monkey

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians made the pyramids from .....  
a) granite                      b) glass                      c) wood                      d) cotton
2. Gold is valuable and .....  
a) weak                      b) easy                      c) durable                      d) cold
3. A hot and dry climate helps to ..... artifacts.  
a) destroy                      b) preserve                      c) damage                      d) cut
4. The ancient Egyptians ..... cats. They loved them very much.  
a) hated                      b) disliked                      c) ate                      d) adored
5. "....." means seeds from plants used to make flour and bread.  
a) Grain                      b) Wood                      c) Glass                      d) Copper



## Final Revision

6. A ..... is an object made of stone to look like a person or animal.  
a) grain      b) statue      c) mummy      d) wisdom
7. She cried. Her ..... fell on her cheeks.  
a) hair      b) wears      c) tears      d) pears
8. The Ancient Egyptians ..... with other countries.  
a) traded      b) studied      c) hated      d) disliked
9. The Ancient Egyptians used metal to make tools and .....  
a) glass      b) paper      c) cotton      d) weapons
10. I have a new ..... of black shoes.  
a) pair      b) pear      c) bear      d) hair
11. Gold is a ..... metal.  
a) precious      b) ugly      c) dirty      d) useless
12. They ..... iron from the ground.  
a) wore      b) mined      c) teared      d) grew
13. They killed the man with a .....  
a) paper      b) water      c) dagger      d) air

**3**

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

**pets - pests - before - adored**

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals. They kept many as 1) ..... They particularly 2) ..... cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of 3) ..... like rats and snakes.



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

**weapons - harder - Metal - water**

The Ancient Egyptians traded with other countries. 1) ..... was one thing they traded. Metal was 2) ..... than rocks, and they could melt and form it into different shapes. They used metal to make tools and 3) ..... , so that they could hunt over the land, and grow food.



4

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than 5,000 years ago. Before iron, they worked with copper and bronze. Amazingly, some of their early iron was from meteorites. Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous dagger for Tutankhamun's tomb from a meteorite. They also mined iron from the ground. But they found it quite difficult to use because it needs a very hot fire to melt, which often wasn't possible. They thought iron was special because they believed it came from the sky (because of the meteorites). They called it "the metal of heaven". For them, iron was more precious than gold because it was rarer.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The Ancient Egyptians started using iron more than ..... years ago.  
a) 500                      b) 5,000                      c) 50                      d) 50,000
- Ancient Egyptian craftsmen made a famous ..... for Tutankhamun's tomb.  
a) hammer                      b) fork                      c) dagger                      d) spoon

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What metals did the Ancient Egyptians use before iron?  
.....

- Why did the Ancient Egyptians think iron was special?  
.....

- What is the general idea of the text?  
.....

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

Coffee was discovered in Ethiopia in the eleventh century. At first, the leaves of the coffee plant were boiled in water. The drink was used as medicine. Coffee wasn't planted outside Ethiopia until the fourteenth century. For 300 years, the original recipe from Ethiopia was used. Later, coffee became popular in many places. The coffee beans were cooked over a fire and made into a powder. This was mixed with water and cooked slowly on a fire ashes. This recipe was taken all over the world.



## Final Revision

A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Coffee was first planted in .....  
a) Egypt      b) Ethiopia      c) London      d) China
- The underlined word "recipe" means a way of ..... something.  
a) keeping      b) sweeping      c) cooking      d) cleaning

B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the main idea of the text?

.....

4. How was coffee used at first?

.....

5. When was coffee discovered?

.....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. you - to - What - like - would - know - ?

.....

2. animals - loved - The - Egyptians - Ancient - .

.....

3. Did - a - weekend - have - nice - you - ?

.....

4. went - Park - with - I - Al-Azhar - my - to - family - .

.....

5. on - ride - We - boat - went - a - .

.....

6. fell - and - my - over - I - hurt - arm - .

.....

7. in - up - grew - Alexandria - He - .

.....

8. The - are - the - on - books - shelves - .

.....



**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. The Ancient Egyptians ..... (love) their pets.
2. At university, I ..... (study) math last year.
3. I didn't ..... (grew) up in Cairo.
4. Did you ..... (had) a nice weekend?
5. I ..... (go) to the park with my family yesterday.
6. The book is ..... (near) to the ruler.
7. The pen is in ..... (behind) of the box.
8. What did you ..... (did) in the park?
9. I ..... (am) at the cinema last week.
10. .... (Did) there a lot of mummies?

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. The Ancient egyptians loved birds
2. did you grow in Alexandria

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:****Animals in Ancient Egypt**

Guiding elements:

(pets - cats)

.....

.....

.....

**Iron in Ancient Egypt**

Guiding elements:

(iron - mined)

.....

.....

.....



# Unit (8)

# Toys and games

## Vocabulary

marbles	البلي	doll's house	بيت الدمية	skateboard	لوح التزلج
cuddly toy	لعبة محشوة	rollerblades	حذاء التزلج (زلجات)	bricks	طوب
skipping	نط الحبل	images = graphics	صور - رسومات	modern	حديث
train set	لعبة القطار	games console	وحدة تحكم ألعاب	adventure	مغامرة
market	سوق	although - though	بالرغم من - ومع ذلك	creative	مبدع - إبداعي
posters	ملصقات	hide and seek	الاستغماية	stall	كشك - دكانة
description	وصف	video games	ألعاب الفيديو	parents	الوالدان
outside	بالخارج	action figure	شخصية حركية	board game	لعبة لوحية
machine	آلة	hopscotch	لعبة المربعات (الحجلة)	amazing	مذهل

## Pronunciation

"gh" sounds like /f/

تتطق "gh" مثل صوت /f/.

draughts	لعبة الداما	laughter	الضحك	tough	متين - قاسي
cough	كحة / يكح	laugh	يضحك	enough	كافي

"gh" is silent in most words.

تكون "gh" صامتة "لا تتطق" في معظم الكلمات.

bought	اشتري	drought	جفاف	high	مرتفع - عالٍ
thought	اعتقد / فكر	eight	رقم ثمانية	daughter	ابنة
night	ليلة	brought	أحضر		

## Language

1) Intensifiers: (really / very / so + adj.) (really + verb) (Negative + at all) **نفي**

e.g. I was **really / very** good at hiding.

I didn't like skipping **at all**. - I **really** enjoy video games.

2) Verbs followed by (verb + -ing):

(continue - finish - hate - imagine - like - prefer - stop)

e.g. I enjoy **playing** football.

I prefer **making** up stories.



# Activities on Unit (8)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My favorite toy was my .....  
a) cuddly toy    b) skateboard    c) train set    d) bike
2. I played in the ..... with my friends.  
a) school    b) club    c) park    d) street
3. My skateboard had black, with ..... stickers on it.  
a) red    b) yellow    c) white    d) orange and yellow
4. I had to wear a ..... and pads.  
a) shoe    b) helmet    c) cap    d) shirt

## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I visited my ..... last week.  
a) uncle    b) grandma    c) grandpa    d) uncle
2. I could go really fast on my .....  
a) skateboard    b) rollerblades    c) train set    d) bike
3. My toys were .....  
a) big    b) small    c) old    d) new
4. My sister had a .....  
a) cuddly toy    b) doll's house    c) skateboard    d) puppy

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I always visit my uncle ..... the weekend.  
a) in    b) on    c) up    d) by
2. I had an action ..... I loved playing with it.  
a) player    b) finger    c) figure    d) fighter
3. I didn't have a ..... set when I was younger.  
a) car    b) train    c) ship    d) bus
4. You can go quiet fast on .....  
a) stall    b) action figure    c) rollerblades    d) hopscotch
5. My little sister always takes her favorite ..... toy to bed.  
a) train    b) cuddly    c) action    d) doll



## Final Revision

6. At school, we use chalk to make a ..... game.  
a) beard      b) hopscotch      c) skipping      d) football
7. There are some wooden toys on the toy .....  
a) stall      b) still      c) sail      d) ship
8. My brother is really good at ..... and seek.  
a) ride      b) hide      c) run      d) swim
9. Video games are great when they're .....  
a) bad      b) difficult      c) creative      d) old
10. A ..... is when there isn't enough rain.  
a) drought      b) draught      c) flood      d) desert
11. A ..... is used to make a boat move.  
a) sale      b) stall      c) sail      d) snail
12. The elephant has a long .....  
a) head      b) trunk      c) button      d) sail
13. I like ..... I'm very good at hiding.  
a) running      b) hide and seek      c) climbing      d) skipping
14. "....." means to try something.  
a) Have a go      b) Have a look      c) Make up      d) Beat

3

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

**hopscotch - interesting - plays - seek**

I started a project on the weekend. It was about toys and games. It's really 1) ..... I thought hide and 2) ..... was fun. I also liked 3) ..... I was quite good at it, but I preferred skipping. My sister practiced it a lot. We often play together.



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

**house - making - home - imagination**

When Sara was little, she really liked games that used a lot of 1) ..... She was very good at 2) ..... up stories. She had a doll's 3) ....., some cuddly toys, and some action figures. She enjoyed playing with them.



4

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often, though. I play for about an hour on the weekend. It's fun! My favorite games are ones where you build cities. I've made a really big city using different bricks. It has animals and plants in it, too. I like these games because you can be creative and make something new. Some of the images in modern video games are amazing. I've got a new games console, which I share with my sister. She enjoys playing adventure games, where you can go to different places to find something important or solve a problem. They can be difficult but I think they can be fun, too, because they're so exciting.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. I play video games for ..... on the weekend.  
 a) 30 hours      b) 60 minutes      c) four hours      d) 2 hours
2. The word "images" means .....  
 a) stickers      b) games      c) graphics      d) dolls

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What are your favorite games?  
 .....
4. What do you think of adventure games?  
 .....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
 .....

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

One day, Fares and Ramy were playing hopscotch in the school yard. They were drawing squares using different colored chalk when their friend Magdy came to talk to them. "What are you playing?" asked Magdy. "It's hopscotch!" said Fares. "Do you want to play?" "How do you play it?" asked Magdy. "It's very easy," said Ramy. "First, you throw this rock onto the squares. Next, you see which square it is in. Then you hop to the end of the squares and back, but you have to jump over the square with your rock." "Great! I'd love to have a go!" said Magdy.



## Final Revision

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- The children used colored ..... to draw squares.  
a) pens      b) pencils      c) crayons      d) chalk
- "Have a go" means to ..... something.  
a) play      b) try      c) beat      d) leave

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What's the main idea of the text?

.....

4. Where were the children playing?

.....

5. What were the children playing?

.....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.

1. loved - with - I - playing - action - my - figures - .

.....

2. didn't - board - We - games - very - play - often - .

.....

3. marbles - Nadia - pretty - very - some - has - .

.....

4. did - enjoy - What - you - playing - games - ?

.....

5. was - good - I - making up - very - at - stories - .

.....

6. laugh - when - We - play - we - draughts - .

.....

7. is - favorite - What - your - game - ?

.....

8. stopped - with my - I - playing - set - train - .

.....



## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I ..... (very) liked playing football.
2. This toy is not interesting ..... (quite).
3. My dad enjoys ..... (make) up stories.
4. Sarah prefers ..... (play) with her dolls.
5. Shima ..... (quite) enjoys playing marbles.
6. We imagined ..... (be) in a plane over the city.
7. Does your brother love ..... (read) stories?
8. I don't like listening to music ..... (very).
9. Did you finish ..... (to do) your homework?
10. I think tennis is ..... (so) good, but I prefer football.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

1. what's your favorite toy
2. sarah wasn't good at running

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Your favorite toy**

**Guiding elements:**

(skateboard - stickers)

**Guiding elements:**

**Different games**

(skipping - hopscotch)



# Unit (9)

# What's the story?

## Vocabulary

setting	المكان والزمان	message	رسالة	reply	يرد / الرد
moral	مغزى - الدرس المستفاد	surf	يركب الأمواج	story	قصة
narrator	راوي	grandparents	الأجداد	bottle	زجاجة
ending	خاتمة - نهاية	sheep	أغنام	weekend	عطلة نهاية الأسبوع
beginning	بداية	shepherd	راعي	villager	قروي
characters	الشخصيات	coast	ساحل	boat	قارب
events	أحداث	sailing	الإبحار	excited	متحمس
review	مقال نقدي	favorite	مفضل	later	فيما بعد - لاحقًا
man	رجل	things	أشياء	plane	طائرة
journey	رحلة	work	يعمل	travel	يسافر

## Pronunciation

### /w/ sound

water	ماء	walk	يمشي
wolf	ذئب	whisper	يهمس
wave	موجة	white	أبيض
west	غرب	whale	حوت

## Language

### The Past Continuous Tense

زمن الماضي المستمر

- نستخدم الماضي المستمر ليدل على شيء كان يحدث في وقت معين في الماضي.

eg. Yesterday afternoon, John **was walking** his dog.

- يمكننا أيضًا استخدام الماضي المستمر لبيان أن حدثًا ما قطع حدثًا آخر.

ماضي بسيط + **when** + ماضي مستمر

eg. I **was reading** a book **when** my dad **came** home.

### Sequencing adverbs

ظروف التسلسل

First أولاً

Next التالي

Then ثم

After that بعد ذلك

Finally أخيرًا



# Activities on Unit (9)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ali and I were playing in the .....  
a) forest      b) street      c) river      d) lake
2. It was a ..... afternoon.  
a) bad      b) terrible      c) cold      d) lovely
3. We were hoping to see some interesting animals and .....  
a) stones      b) boys      c) crocodiles      d) birds
4. Suddenly we saw a little ..... in the distance.  
a) cave      b) house      c) hut      d) cell



## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Tom's grandparents lived by the .....  
a) river      b) sky      c) sea      d) ocean
2. The beach near their house was ..... and beautiful.  
a) quiet      b) noisy      c) crowded      d) dirty
3. They swam, surfed and played games on the .....  
a) mud      b) dirt      c) dust      d) sand
4. Tom saw a glass ..... in the water.  
a) knife      b) bottle      c) spoon      d) cup

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The ..... of the story is "kindness is everything".  
a) character      b) moral      c) setting      d) plural
2. The main ..... was a bit boring - I didn't like him.  
a) moral      b) setting      c) place      d) character
3. The ..... is the person who tells you the story.  
a) setting      b) moral      c) narrator      d) listener
4. In the ....., we find out why the man was sad.  
a) ending      b) setting      c) character      d) narrator
5. The ..... is London in 1965.  
a) sitting      b) setting      c) moral      d) character



## Final Revision

6. Let's write a ..... of one of Goha's stories.  
a) view                      b) interview                      c) review                      d) color
7. The ..... ate the sheep.  
a) cat                      b) rat                      c) mouse                      d) wolf
8. My uncle is a ..... He has a farm with a lot of animals.  
a) villager                      b) carpenter                      c) baker                      d) teacher
9. Can you work ..... your own?  
a) with                      b) at                      c) in                      d) on
10. The setting is in the ..... where there are animals and plants.  
a) city                      b) town                      c) countryside                      d) space
11. The story is ..... All people like it.  
a) popular                      b) boring                      c) bad                      d) terrible
12. We go to the ..... to buy vegetables.  
a) baker's                      b) library                      c) market                      d) aquarium
13. He sent a ..... to my message.  
a) replay                      b) reply                      c) apply                      d) email
14. My favorite ..... is blue.  
a) subject                      b) day                      c) color                      d) sport

**3**

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

**market - journey - flight - setting**

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The one about a man who goes to the 1) ..... with his son and a donkey. The 2) ..... is the countryside, many years ago. Two of the characters – the man and his son – take turns riding the donkey because it's a long 3) .....



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

**moral - example - bad - different**

I loved reading Goha's stories. His stories are popular all over the world. But he's known by 1) ..... names. For 2) ....., in Sudan, he's Jawha. In Algeria, he's Jeha, and in Morocco, he's Jha. All the stories have a 3) ..... that Goha wants to teach us.



#### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

A boy named John was once taking care of some sheep not far from a forest. Nearby was a village. One day, he thought he would have some fun, and he cried out, "The wolf is coming! The wolf is coming!" The men came running to save the boy from the wolf. As they saw nothing, they went home again and left John laughing. John cried out again the next day, "The wolf! The wolf!" The men came again. Again, they saw no wolf, so they shook their heads and went back. On the third day, the wolf came. John cried, "Help! Help! The wolf! The wolf!" Not a single man came to help him. The wolf broke into the flock and ate the sheep. John felt very sorry that he had deceived his friends and neighbors.

#### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People shook their heads because they found ..... wolf.  
a) no                      b) one                      c) two                      d) a lot of
2. The boy felt ..... that he had deceived his friends.  
a) happy                      b) glad                      c) sorry                      d) good

#### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What was the boy taking care of?  
.....

4. Why did the men come running?  
.....

5. What is the main idea of the text?  
.....

#### Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Kareem. I have got two brothers and three sisters. My father is an old farmer. My mother is a housewife. She spends all her time cooking and cleaning the house. My father and mother work day and night to help us live happily. They bring us up to love our country Egypt. We live in a nice house on the farm. My father grows a lot of vegetables. He also keeps some animals and birds. In my school, I have got a lot of friends. My school day begins at eight o'clock in the morning. After school, I usually help my father. I love looking after animals and birds. I like to study farming because I want to grow the main crops on our farm.



**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Kareem's mother works at .....  
 a) home      b) school      c) bank      d) company
2. The underlined word "They" refers to .....  
 a) father      b) birds      c) animals      d) his parents

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. How many persons are there in Kareem's family?  
 .....

4. Why do you think Kareem like to study farming?  
 .....

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
 .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. by - sea - Tom's - lived - the - grandparents - .  
 .....
2. Let's - the bottle - the - put - in - trash - .  
 .....
3. was - like - the - What - weather - ?  
 .....
4. is - character - the - main - Who - ?  
 .....
5. What - story - the - is - moral - the - of - ?  
 .....
6. the piano - playing - when - mom - He - arrived - was - .  
 .....
7. house - grandparents' - went - Tom - to - his - .  
 .....
8. your - games - are - What - favorite - ?  
 .....



**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. She ..... (do) her homework when she got a message.
2. We were playing computer games when Ali ..... (arrive).
3. Yesterday afternoon, Adam ..... (is walking) his dog.
4. They ..... (play) in the park when they found a note.
5. I was reading a book when my dad ..... (comes) home.
6. Were you ..... (look) at your phone when I saw you?
7. I wasn't watching TV when you ..... (call) me.
8. Dad ..... (read) a newspaper when Lina came.
9. Ayman ..... (ride) a bike when his phone rang.
10. Hazem ..... (watch) a football match when Egypt scored a goal.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. fatima was doing her homework
2. where does Ahmed live

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**How to make Salatet Zabadee**

**Guiding elements:**

(First - cucumber)

**A beginning of a story**

**Guiding elements:**

(forest - animals)



## Vocabulary

successful	ناجح	camp	يخيم - يعسكر
similar	متشابه	coral reefs	الشعاب المرجانية
real	حقيقي	protected area	منطقة محمية
sensible	عاقل / حكيم - معقول	tourists	السياح
eco-tourism	السياحة البيئية	damage	يتلف / يضر
sustainable	مستدام (ملائم للبيئة)	pelican	بجعة
ideal	مثالي	kingfisher	طائر الرفراف
respect	يحترم	swift	طائر السنونو / السمامة
simple	بسيط	eagle	نسر
accommodation	أماكن إقامة / سكن	migrate	يهاجر
scuba dive	يغوص تحت الماء	close to	قريب من
wildlife	الحياة البرية	desert	صحراء
mountains	الجبال	forest	غابة
habitat	موطن - بيئة	space	مساحة فارغة

## Activities

hiking	التنزه سيرًا على الأقدام	visiting beaches	زيارة الشواطئ
snorkeling	الغطس بأنبوب التنفس	cooking outdoors	الطهي بالخارج
watching movies	مشاهدة الأفلام	traveling on a river	التنقل عبر النهر
taking photos	التقاط الصور	taking photos underwater	التقاط الصور تحت الماء
going to restaurants	الذهاب للمطاعم	wildlife-watching	مشاهدة الحياة البرية



## Pronunciation

## Two syllables

weather

falcon

careful

## Three syllables

flamingo

successful

pelican

## Grammar

## Necessity الضرورة والإلزام

يجب أن.. **must + inf. المصدر**

تستخدم للتعبير عن الضرورة لعمل شيء ما

e.g. You **must** protect the environment.يجب ألا.. **mustn't + inf. المصدر**

تستخدم للتعبير عن عدم السماح بعمل شيء ما

e.g. You **mustn't** smoke here.

## (If) First Conditional

"إذا / لو" الحالة الشرطية الأولى

## Form التكوين

**If + subject + present simple , subject + (will + inf.) ...**e.g. If people **learn** more about the environment, they **will want** to protect it.

## Usage الاستخدام

- We use **the first conditional** to talk about things that are likely to happen in the future.

نستخدم الحالة الشرطية الأولى للتحدث عن أشياء محتمل حدوثها في المستقبل.

e.g. If tourists **stay** in simple accommodation, there **won't be** so many big hotels.



# Activities on Unit (10)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ras Mohammed National Park is on the ..... Sea.  
a) Red                      b) Black                      c) Dead                      d) White
2. This area is on the Sinai .....  
a) River                      b) Ocean                      c) Sea                      d) Peninsula
3. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba .....  
a) fly                      b) dive                      c) ride                      d) drive
4. You can see coral ..... and lots of fish.  
a) roofs                      b) flats                      c) reefs                      d) walls



## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Fares is going to see some beautiful .....  
a) animals                      b) caves                      c) birds                      d) cars
2. He will visit quiet beaches on a small .....  
a) car                      b) bike                      c) boat                      d) bus
3. The sea in this area is very .....  
a) popular                      b) dirty                      c) dusty                      d) ugly
4. It will be a ..... day.  
a) calm                      b) quiet                      c) busy                      d) free

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. If something is ....., it is a good idea that someone has thought about carefully.  
a) terrible                      b) sensible                      c) hard                      d) easy
2. If something is ....., it happens and is true.  
a) false                      b) wrong                      c) real                      d) unreal
3. A ..... person tries hard not to make mistakes.  
a) careful                      b) mad                      c) crazy                      d) careless
4. When two things are ....., they might look the same.  
a) different                      b) various                      c) bad                      d) similar
5. Someone who is ..... tries to do something, and does it.  
a) loser                      b) successful                      c) careless                      d) mad



6. When people ..... the environment, they want to protect it.  
a) respect      b) destroy      c) damage      d) harm
7. If you go bird-watching, you mustn't get too ..... to the birds.  
a) far      b) wide      c) close      d) top
8. Eco-tourism is more ..... than vacations which don't care about the environment.  
a) similar      b) sustainable      c) easy      d) good
9. Many birds ..... to find warmer weather in winter.  
a) respect      b) study      c) swim      d) migrate
10. The proverb says "The early bird ..... the worm."  
a) plays      b) catches      c) watches      d) makes
11. Tourists come to Ras Mohammed to Scuba .....  
a) fly      b) dive      c) swim      d) drive
12. "....." means perfect or excellent.  
a) Ideal      b) Respect      c) Bad      d) Terrible
13. "....." is living in a place where you have what you need.  
a) Food      b) Accommodation      c) Clothes      d) Sustainable
14. I like ..... photos.  
a) going      b) making      c) swimming      d) taking

## 3

**Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

**safari - snorkeling - flying - historical**

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many 1)..... places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go 2)..... in the Red Sea, go on a desert 3)....., climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important – but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too.



**Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

**Lake - market - flocks - Coasts**

Many water birds migrate to Egypt. You can often see large 1)..... of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean 2)....., as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. 3)..... Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.



4

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

In the early morning today, two young men were fishing in a small boat when the weather suddenly changed. The sky turned grey and it became very windy. During the bad storm, the two men fell into the water. A man, Mr Hamdi was walking by the sea at that time. He was very brave. He jumped into the sea and rescued the two men. Mr Hamdi has lived in that area for 30 years. He said that he hadn't seen such a bad storm since he was a little boy.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Two young men were fishing in a .....  
 a) big boat      b) small boat      c) big ship      d) small ship
2. Mr Hamdi lived in that area for ..... years.  
 a) fifty      b) forty      c) thirty      d) twenty

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What happened during the bad storm?  
 .....
4. What was Mr Hamdi doing during the bad storm?  
 .....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.  
 .....



**Read the text and answer the questions.**

Our exams finished a week ago. My friend Ayman asked me to recommend a library to go to together. I recommended the Public Library in our city. I recommended it because it is very big and quiet. Moreover, it is near our houses, so, we would go on foot. The most important reason that made me recommend this library is that we can find all the books we need. Ayman and I like reading in our free time. When we went there, we found our teacher of English. He was happy when he saw us and offered to help us. Really, it was a nice day.



**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- When they went to the library, they found the teacher of .....  
a) Arabic      b) English      c) science      d) maths
- Their teacher offered to ..... them.  
a) borrow      b) speak      c) call      d) help

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What place did the speaker recommend?

.....

4. Why would the speaker and Ayman go to the library on foot?

.....

5. What is the main idea of the text?

.....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

- catches - worm - the - early - The - bird - .  
.....
- Birds - together - flock - a - feather - of - .  
.....
- nests - don't - Singing - build - birds - .  
.....
- an - country - amazing - is - Egypt - .  
.....
- People - Sea - in - go - Red - can - snorkeling - the - .  
.....
- to - turtles - hope - and - see - lizards - We - .  
.....
- scare - mustn't - birds - the - You - .  
.....
- to - Egypt - and - birds - from - Many - migrate - .  
.....



**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. You ..... (mustn't) respect nature.
2. You ..... (must) scare birds or animals.
3. If I am hungry, I ..... (eat) a snack.
4. If Omar ..... (play) football for two hours, he will be tired.
5. When we go camping, we ..... (mustn't) take a tent with us.
6. If you learn to bake, you ..... (save) a lot of money.
7. You mustn't ..... (leaves) trash on the beach.
8. If she feels thirsty, she ..... (would) drink some water.
9. You mustn't ..... (walking) in the desert when it is hot.
10. You ..... (mustn't) be careful in the natural environment.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. We re going on a tour
2. you must study hard for exams

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Eco-tourism in Egypt**

Guiding elements:

(historical - museums)

.....

.....

.....

**Bird migration**

Guiding elements:

(migrate - winter)

.....

.....

.....



# Unit (11)

## How can I help?

### Vocabulary

donate	يتبرع	participate	يشارك	support	يساند - يدعم
volunteer	يتطوع	help out	يساعد في	start up	يبدأ
jealous	غيور	multi-grip	مقبض متعدد الأغراض	install	يركب / يثبت
record	يسجل	reward	يكافئ / مكافأة	sparrow	عصفور
kind to	عطوف مع	look after	يعني بـ	day center	مركز رعاية نهارية
confidence	ثقة	fundraising	جمع تبرعات	give back	يرد (الجميل)
grabber	أداة التقاط	handle	مقبض	film	يُصور
socialize	يتواصل اجتماعيًا	nature camera			كاميرا لتصوير الطبيعة

### Pronunciation

sh /ʃ/		ch /tʃ/		tch /tʃ/	
shoe	فردة حذاء	rich	غني	watch	يشاهد
shop	محل	chop	يقطع	catch	يمسك
ship	سفينة	chip	رقاقة	kitchen	مطبخ

### Language

#### to + inf.

- نستخدم (to + inf) لبيان الغرض.

We wear gloves **to protect** our hands.

### Adverbs

الظروف

- **An Adverb** is a word that describes a verb.

(الحال / الظرف) هو كلمة تصف الفعل.

quick → quickly

- يتكون الحال بإضافة "ly" إلى الصفة.

- They walk **quickly**.

- هناك بعض الأحوال غير المنتظمة.

good → well

fast → fast

hard → hard

- He runs **fast**.

She plays **well**.



# Activities on Unit (11)

نصوص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Ramses II was a great ..... King.  
a) Spanish      b) French      c) Egyptian      d) American
2. His ..... is called Sethi.  
a) father      b) uncle      c) brother      d) son
3. His father became the ..... of Egypt.  
a) minister      b) merchant      c) seller      d) Pharaoh
4. His brother died when he was ..... years old.  
a) 11      b) 14      c) 18      d) 22



## Listen and circle the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I volunteer at a ..... for old people.  
a) hospital      b) library      c) day center      d) school
2. Some old people ..... open glass bottles and jars.  
a) can      b) may      c) will      d) can't
3. Their ..... aren't strong enough.  
a) hands      b) eyes      c) legs      d) ears
4. They use a ..... to take off the tops.  
a) nature camera      b) grabber      c) multi-grip      d) eraser

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. When people ....., it makes them feel happy to help other people.  
a) socialize      b) respect      c) volunteer      d) support
2. When you ....., you spend time with people in a friendly way.  
a) hate      b) dislike      c) take      d) socialize
3. Animals need safe ..... where they can live, find food, and look after their babies.  
a) houses      b) schools      c) habitats      d) trees
4. I am always kind ..... younger children.  
a) up      b) to      c) of      d) out
5. My brother sometimes helps ..... at a day center.  
a) back      b) after      c) out      d) up



6. It's very important to look ..... your pets.  
a) to      b) of      c) on      d) after
7. Last year, we decided to ..... up a free art club.  
a) begin      b) end      c) start      d) look
8. How can you ..... back to your community?  
a) give      b) take      c) lend      d) borrow
9. We could ..... money to charity.  
a) volunteer      b) participate      c) donate      d) talk
10. I ..... my little brother.  
a) give up      b) look after      c) helps out      d) start up
11. Children who ..... in a group activity usually have lots of fun!  
a) donate      b) look after      c) participate      d) volunteer
12. We ..... to help in the community service project every year.  
a) run      b) volunteer      c) donate      d) close
13. A ..... is something you get for doing a good job or being helpful.  
a) sparrow      b) jealous      c) reward      d) award
14. "....." means feeling unhappy because someone has what you want.  
a) Jealous      b) Confidence      c) Happiness      d) Hatred

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

participating - donate - skills - sports

I decided that I wanted to help children in my school. I love  
1) ....., so I started an after-school club to teach the younger children  
football 2) ..... I was a bit nervous at first, but lots of children joined  
in and their parents were very happy. It was great to have so many children  
3) .....

### Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

pictures - planted - sick - being

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's  
better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like  
1) ..... there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children  
who are 2) ..... My friends and I painted lots of big 3) ..... of  
flowers, animals, beaches, and trees.



4

**Read the text and answer the questions.**

Hi, I'm Tamer. At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to support other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable garden in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people volunteered to help clean trash from the river, so that animals' habitats are safer.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. We started a ..... called Community Help.  
a) lecture      b) project      c) test      d) quiz
2. We want to help people or things in our .....  
a) school      b) club      c) community      d) library

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What does the underlined word "support" mean?

4. Why did people volunteer to help clean the trash?

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.



**Read the text and answer the questions.**

Have you ever had an idea for a new video game? Video games are not just for fun. They are big business. Creating one isn't simple. It can take years. It takes plenty of people, too! Some people work on programming the game. They build the game in a computer program. Others are artists. They draw the pictures for the game. But they don't use paper and pencil. They use a computer program. And there are people who work on the sounds you hear. It takes lots of teamwork.



**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The passage is about .....  
a) teamwork b) programming c) computer program d) video games
2. Some people build the ..... in a computer program.  
a) game b) room c) box d) container

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. How long does it take to create a game?  
.....

4. What do the artists use to draw the pictures for a game?  
.....

5. What is the main idea of the text?  
.....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences.**

1. charity - children's - a local - start up - We - to - decided - .  
.....
2. grow - to - want - people - some - did - What - ?  
.....
3. football - get - at - better - I - seeing - like - the children - .  
.....
4. animals - important - kind to - think - I - it's - to be - .  
.....
5. clean-up - a beach - a grabber - on - use - does - Anas - Why - ?  
.....
6. by bus - her cousins - see - Farah - to - traveled - .  
.....
7. some candy - bought - the movie - to - We - during - eat - .  
.....
8. lemonade - to - the market - in - They - sell - make - .  
.....



## 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. I bought a card to ..... (sent) it to my grandma.
2. Nesma wears sunglasses ..... (for) protect her eyes.
3. My uncle went to Cairo to ..... (visiting) a friend.
4. Mom is using an app to ..... (learnt) French.
5. Rahma listens to music ..... (for) help her relax.
6. I went to the sports center to ..... (played) tennis.
7. She turned on the radio ..... (for) listen to some songs.
8. He picked up the phone to ..... (calling) his friend.
9. They open the fridge to ..... (drank) cold water.
10. We wear gloves ..... (for) protect our hands.

## 7 Punctuate the following.

1. what are these buttons for
2. you use this to swim under water

## 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

### Ways to be a good citizen

#### Guiding elements:

( respect others - protect the environment )

.....

.....

.....

### A biography of a volunteer

#### Guiding elements:

- Fareeda Hassan
- Born in 1994.

.....

.....



### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Adel is in a ..... school.  
a) secondary    b) kindergarten    c) preparatory    d) primary
2. Adel's mother helps ..... people.  
a) sick    b) well    c) sad    d) happy
3. Adel's father is a .....  
a) teacher    b) farmer    c) dentist    d) doctor
4. Adel's mother works in a big .....  
a) school    b) hospital    c) station    d) museum

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I love playing with ..... They are small balls that can go really fast.  
a) cuddly toy    b) skateboard    c) marbles    d) board
2. To ..... is to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a long time.  
a) wear    b) buy    c) skip    d) mummify
3. The area contains many ..... of migrating birds.  
a) metals    b) clubs    c) species    d) stars

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

sharks - wildlife - allowed - sea

You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly colored fish, and maybe 1) ..... There is lots of other 2) ..... too, and it is a great place for bird watching. The National Park is protected, but people are 3) ..... to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Reading is very important in our life. We should read different kinds of books. We learn new things from reading. I like reading Goha's stories. I can learn the moral from reading them. They are funny and clever. Goha was also a great narrator. He is known by different names all over the world. But his stories have some differences in every country. They have the moral that Goha wants to teach us.



## Exams

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Goha was a great .....  
a) traveller      b) teacher      c) swimmer      d) narrator
- The underlined word "them" refers to Goha's .....  
a) stories      b) names      c) morals      d) countries

### B) Answer the following questions.

- What's the main idea of the passage? .....
- Are the stories the same all over the world? .....
- What do the stories have? .....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- afternoon - I - was - a match - yesterday - watching -  
.....
- setting - your - What's - story - the - of - ?  
.....

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- If Nada eats all this cake, she ..... (feel) sick.
- She gets high marks ..... (so) she studies hard.

### 7 Punctuate the following.

- i really enjoy riding my bike
- who doesn t like skipping?

### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Iron in Ancient Egypt**

**Guiding elements:**

(meteorites - mined)



# Exam (2)

## محافظة الإسكندرية

معدل حسب المواصفات الجديدة

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I'm writing a ..... of one of Goha's stories.  
a) lesson      b) review      c) plan      d) map
2. The story is about a man who goes to the market with his .....  
a) wife      b) mother      c) son      d) daughter
3. The setting is the .....  
a) city      b) countryside      c) sea      d) house
4. The journey is .....  
a) exciting      b) dangerous      c) easy      d) long

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I could go really fast on my .....  
a) house      b) skateboard      c) desk      d) bag
2. My friend sent me a ..... on my phone yesterday to help animal habitats.  
a) castle      b) window      c) message      d) box
3. I learned a ..... from my dad's story.  
a) setting      b) character      c) problem      d) moral

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

tourists - guide - artifacts - great

One day, my friend and I went to the Egyptian museum in Cairo. The museum was full of Ancient Egyptian 1) ..... There were a lot of 2) ..... who came from Europe to watch these things. Mr. Ali was our 3) ..... at the museum. He told us a lot of interesting information about the museum. We enjoyed our time.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I'm Lily. I'm 12 years old and I'm from England. We don't buy our fruit at the supermarket. We grow it in our garden. England is too cold for peaches and bananas to grow, but there are two apple trees and a plum tree in our garden. We grow vegetables in the spring and summer, too. We've also got some hens in our garden and we eat their eggs. There's only one problem. They love eating our vegetable seeds!



**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Lily is from .....  
a) Egypt      b) England      c) China      d) India
- The weather is too cold for peaches and .....  
a) bananas      b) oranges      c) figs      d) grapes

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What kinds of trees are there in Lily's garden? .....
- When do they grow vegetables? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

- did - find - What - you - the box - in - ?  
.....
- funny - person - He - and - is - a - clever - .  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- I .....(play) football at the club yesterday.
- You .....(mustn't) take medicine when you are ill.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

- some birds can fly very long distances
- what does this proverb mean Hana

**8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words about:**

A day on the beach to your friend Sara. Your name is Marwa and your email address is Marwa@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is Sara@yahoo.com.

**Guiding elements:**

( beach - played games )



# Exam (3)

## محافظة القليوبية معدل حسب المواصفات الجديدة

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Teenagers should ..... if they can.  
a) eat                      b) write                      c) play                      d) volunteer
- You learn to talk to people you wouldn't .....  
a) run                      b) feed                      c) meet                      d) lead
- Volunteering gives you .....  
a) happiness                      b) importance                      c) confidence                      d) sadness
- It's good to ..... to the place where you live.  
a) give out                      b) give away                      c) give up                      d) give back

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Farmers produced a lot of .....  
a) grain                      b) mice                      c) cats                      d) baboons
- I live on the ..... and I love sailing.  
a) coast                      b) moon                      c) market                      d) space
- The scuba divers explored the .....  
a) tents                      b) coral reefs                      c) mountains                      d) deserts

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

endings - moral - lesson - popular

I like reading stories. Goha's stories are very 1) ..... all over the world. Goha wanted to teach us a 2) ..... It's 3) ..... of the story. Goha's stories have some differences, but they are known by different names.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

I am Malik. This is my story. "The day I never forgot". Yesterday evening, I was going back from my club. Suddenly it rained a lot and the lights went out. I was scared because the bus driver asked me to get off the bus. I met an old man behind a tree. There were many black dogs shouting. I was running when I met my father. Then, I felt happy. I went back home with my wet clothes.



**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. Malik went back home with his ..... clothes.  
a) clean      b) dirty      c) untidy      d) wet
2. Malik saw black ..... shouting.  
a) wolves      b) dogs      c) donkeys      d) cats

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What's the main idea of the passage? .....
4. Why was Malik scared? .....
5. Who did Malik meet behind a tree? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

1. playing - did - What - like - you - games - ?  
.....

2. everyone - can't - You - happy - make - .  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. We must .....(visits) Samir tomorrow.
2. He .....(doesn't) enjoy hopscotch yesterday.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. we should study for the exam
2. do you want to read the story

**8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words about:**

To your friend Sereen to tell her about your next summer vacation.

Your name is Nada and your email address is nada44@gmail.com and your friend's email is sereen26@hotmail.com



# Exam (4)

## محافظة الدقهلية معدل حسب المواصفات الجديدة

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- ..... was the most interesting thing the Ancient Egyptians traded.  
a) Silver      b) Granite      c) Metal      d) Paper
- The Ancient Egyptians could form metal into different .....  
a) ships      b) shapes      c) sheep      d) shops
- They first found metal in .....  
a) rocks      b) clothes      c) trees      d) history
- ..... with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptians' economy to develop.  
a) Make      b) Trade      c) Play      d) Stay

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- My little sister sleeps next to her favorite ..... toy.  
a) board      b) cuddly      c) train      d) skate
- Don't count your chickens before they .....  
a) fly      b) eat      c) hatch      d) sleep
- My mom usually uses the ..... to take off the tops.  
a) grabber      b) multi-grip      c) stick      d) fridge

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

coasts - visitors - artifacts - local

Egypt is really an attractive country. There are a lot of 1) ..... come to Egypt from all over the world. It creates new jobs for the 2) ..... people. Egypt has different 3) ..... like the Red Sea and the Mediterranean Sea. It also has many historical places that contain different monuments and jewelry which show how great and smart were the Ancient Egyptians.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Our health is very important. When we're ill, we often visit a doctor. Doctors can examine us and give us medicine to help us get well soon. You can follow these ideas to protect you from illnesses. You should get enough sleep, about eight hours daily. You should have healthy food. You should look after your eyes by examining them regularly. You shouldn't



clean your ears by yourself. It's better to avoid loud noise. It is also very important to exercise for an hour daily. It's good for your heart and your whole body.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined word "exercise" is similar in meaning to .....  
 a) sleep                      b) break                      c) examine                      d) practice
2. You should exercise for ..... hour daily.  
 a) eight                      b) one                      c) no                      d) three

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What's the suitable title for the passage? .....
4. Why is it important to exercise? .....
5. What can doctors do for us? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

1. grandparents - by - My - the sea - happily - lived - .  
 .....
2. mined - They - the - ground - from - metals - .  
 .....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. He .....(at all) liked playing hide and seek.
2. If you love your environment, you .....(protects) it.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. children must respect their parents
2. Who did tamer want to help

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

A description of your favorite video game

**Guiding elements:**

What is it called?

How can it be a problem?



**1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**

- The Ancient Egyptians loved birds, especially ..... and ibises.  
a) parrots      b) ducks      c) falcons      d) pelicans
- Ibises represented ..... in Ancient Egypt.  
a) wisdom      b) grain      c) time      d) happiness
- There are thousands of ..... ibises in Saqqara alone.  
a) colorful      b) large      c) golden      d) mummified
- All these pets were ..... in the afterlife in Ancient Egypt.  
a) bad      b) rare      c) important      d) strange

**2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.**

- ..... is a board game.  
a) Football      b) Tennis      c) Ludo      d) Hopscotch
- The ..... of the story is (never be selfish).  
a) narrator      b) moral      c) brain      d) setting
- The ..... is a powerful bird.  
a) worm      b) ant      c) butterfly      d) eagle

**3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.**

outside - animals - cities - hour

My favorite games are video games. I don't play them very often. I play them for about an 1) ..... on the weekend. My favorite games are ones where you can build 2) ..... I've made a big city that has 3) ..... and plants. I love them because you can be creative and make something new.

**4 Read the text and answer the questions.**

My name is Hala. I'm eleven years old. I live with my family in Cairo. I go to school on foot because it's near my house. My favorite subject is English. I like it very much because it's a fantastic language. I have two brothers and a sister. My teachers are very helpful. When I go back from school, I have lunch at three o'clock. I usually do my homework at seven and sleep at nine.



**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined word "it" refers to .....  
 a) Arabic      b) Science      c) English      d) Arts
2. Hala lives in .....  
 a) Aswan      b) Cairo      c) Giza      d) Luxor

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why does Hala go to school on foot? .....
4. When does Hala sleep? .....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

1. play - you - do - How often - football - ?  
 .....
2. games - on - Children - play - like - to - the sand - .  
 .....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. She wears sunglasses .....(for) protect her eyes from the sun.
2. We .....(swim) in the sea at 4 pm yesterday evening.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. ali plays the piano quietly
2. i think diving is really amazing

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**A day on the beach**

**Guiding elements:**

Who were you with?

What did you do?



## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The weather was lovely and the sun was .....  
a) rising      b) shining      c) sleeping      d) swimming
2. They were swimming in the .....  
a) spring      b) river      c) sea      d) lake
3. Suddenly, they found a ..... in the water.  
a) plastic      b) concrete      c) glass bottle      d) grass
4. They took the bottle to their ..... to open it.  
a) son      b) grandparents      c) friends      d) daughter

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. .... means to buy and sell things between countries.  
a) Shopping      b) Trade      c) Traveling      d) Sailing
2. We love playing all different ..... of games.  
a) plans      b) members      c) groups      d) kinds
3. The person who tells the story is called the .....  
a) narrator      b) enemy      c) friend      d) end

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

beautiful - important - hate - choose

We all should have friends. Making new friends is very 1) ..... Friends make our life more 2) ..... We can make new friends in school, in sports clubs, and in other places. We should 3) ..... our friends carefully. Good friends always help you, love, and encourage you. We can't live without good friends.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Once upon a time, there lived four cows in a little forest. Every day they used to eat fresh grass in a large green field and drink fresh water from the river. They were kind friends and helped each other. They decided to do everything together, so the lions couldn't attack them for food. One day, the four cows fought, and each one started to eat grass in



## Exams

a different place, and they stopped to help each other. The lions watched them and decided to have the chance and killed them one by one.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Once upon a time, ..... cows lived in a little forest.  
a) two                      b) four                      c) six                      d) five
- It's important to ..... each other.  
a) fight                      b) hate                      c) help                      d) buy

### B) Answer the following questions.

- When did lions decide to kill the cows? .....
- What did the cows eat and drink? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- grandparents - by - live - My - sea - the - .  
.....
- at - I - wasn't - good - very - skipping - .  
.....

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- I ..... (not go) to the vacation with my family last week.
- He was ..... (read) a story when his father came.

### 7 Punctuate the following.

- atemu s father is a carpenter.
- what were you doing

### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**Pets in ancient Egypt**

Guiding elements:

( rats - clean )



# Exam (7)

## محافظة الأقصر معدل حسب المواصفات الجديدة

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

### 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Next ..... , Heba is going on a tour.  
a) day                      b) year                      c) month                      d) week
- They are going to see birds and .....  
a) sky                      b) moon                      c) animals                      d) sun
- They are travelling in small .....  
a) planes                      b) boats                      c) cars                      d) trains
- They will bring their ..... with them.  
a) cameras                      b) hats                      c) cats                      d) pots

### 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- You can go quite fast on .....  
a) rollerblades                      b) action                      c) cuddly                      d) stall
- The ..... is a person who tells you a story.  
a) setting                      b) narrator                      c) moral                      d) speaker
- The early bird catches the .....  
a) turtle                      b) worm                      c) worm                      d) snake

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

modern - copper - Ancient - three

The scarab amulet is from 1) ..... Egypt and it is more than  
2) ..... thousand years old. It is made of 3) ..... People wore  
jewelry with the image of a scarab to protect them and bring them a good  
fortune.

### 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My name is Amira. My favourite toy is my brown teddy bear. I got it  
on my birthday. My parents gave it to me. It is soft and cuddly. I play with it  
every day. I love my teddy bear. My brother Kareem likes his ball. It is red  
and white. It is big and round. His friend gave it to him as a gift. He was  
happy when he got it. He likes to play with it.



**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined pronoun "He" refers to .....  
 a) a friend      b) Amira      c) Kareem      d) mom
2. Amira's favourite toy is a .....  
 a) ball      b) teddy bear      c) train set      d) marble

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Who gave Amira the teddy bear? .....
4. What colour is the teddy bear? .....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

1. would - like - What - to - you - know - ?  
 .....

2. riding - enjoy - my - I - bike - really - .  
 .....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. He didn't like skipping .....(very).
2. You .....(mustn't) respect nature.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. i was reading an exciting story
2. they mustn t speak loudly in the library.

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Metals in Ancient Egypt**

**Guiding elements:**

( copper - gold )



# Exam (8)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Amina liked .....  
a) games      b) sports      c) films      d) plays
2. She loved games that used a lot of .....  
a) information      b) generation      c) imagination      d) foundation
3. She had a doll's .....  
a) house      b) home      c) flat      d) yard
4. She had some ..... figures.  
a) act      b) active      c) activity      d) action

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The ..... is the person who tells you the story.  
a) speaker      b) moral      c) narrator      d) setting
2. "The early bird catches the ....."  
a) turtle      b) worm      c) snake      d) worm
3. To take part in something means to .....  
a) donate      b) participate      c) support      d) volunteer

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

path - interesting - number - lovely

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a 1) ..... afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some 2) ..... animals and birds. We were walking along the 3) ..... when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes.



This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The Ancient Egyptians loved .....  
a) birds      b) crocodiles      c) animals      d) snakes
2. The underlined word "adored" means .....  
a) loved      b) hated      c) disliked      d) kept

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What's the main idea of the passage? .....
4. Why didn't the rats eat the grain? .....
5. Was there a cat in almost every house? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

1. air - fresh - the - in - I - walking - like - .....  
.....
2. the main - the villagers - character - Why - did - annoy - ?  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. They were swimming when Tom .....(see) a glass bottle.
2. You .....(mustn't) respect nature.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. i love visiting siwa.
2. did you study English last night

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**A blog about habitats**

**Guiding elements:**

- What is a habitat?      - What do animals need to live?



# Exam (9)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Proverbs have more than one .....  
a) ending      b) meaning      c) beginning      d) starting
2. This proverb tells us about a .....  
a) snake      b) crocodile      c) bird      d) hippo
3. You need to be the ..... to do something.  
a) second      b) fourth      c) tenth      d) first
4. If you want to be ....., you need to be the first.  
a) known      b) successful      c) loser      d) famous

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My uncle keeps ..... on his roof. They're his favorite birds.  
a) pigeons      b) lions      c) tigers      d) leopards
2. Holidays for eco-tourists often have simple .....  
a) volunteers      b) accommodation      c) meanings      d) sports
3. Children who ..... in a group activity usually have lots of fun!  
a) volunteer      b) look after      c) donate      d) participate

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**culture - statues - text - artifacts**

Last summer, we went to a museum in the city. There were so many interesting 1) ..... to see. My brother and I were walking around when we found a room that had lots of animal 2) ..... The Ancient Egyptians made lots of animal statues, because animals were very important in their 3) .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Hi, I'm Lara. We're going to have the chance to do some underwater photography on our vacation! We'll set off on a tour from the beach in small boats, and sail out to places where we can see many different kinds of fish. There are beautiful, bright-colored fish there, as well as coral reefs.



The tour is only on Monday and Wednesday because this is a protected area, so there mustn't be too many trips.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Lara is going to do some underwater .....  
a) photo      b) photograph      c) photography      d) picture
- She wants to see different kinds of .....  
a) lizards      b) snakes      c) hippos      d) fish

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- When is the tour? .....
- What is the main idea of the passage? .....
- Do you think Lara is happy? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

- of - flock - Birds - a feather - together - .  
.....
- my boat - sailing - love - I - coast - on the - .  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- The apple is .....(on) front of the box.
- This book is not funny .....(quite).

**7 Punctuate the following.**

- skateboarding is quite good
- why do we have many artifacts

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Eco-tourism**

**Guiding elements:**

(damage - sustainable)



# Exam (10)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians kept animals as .....  
a) guards      b) pets      c) killers      d) grain
2. The Ancient Egyptians adored .....  
a) frogs      b) lizards      c) rats      d) cats
3. They believed that cats kept them .....  
a) angry      b) dangerous      c) safe      d) sad
4. The cats kept the houses free of .....  
a) lions      b) pests      c) pets      d) tigers

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The ..... of the story is kindness is everything.  
a) narrator      b) setting      c) moral      d) characters
2. If something is ....., it happens and is true.  
a) false      b) careless      c) sensible      d) real
3. "....." means collecting money for a charity.  
a) Snorkeling      b) Fundraising      c) Socialize      d) Confidence

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

teenagers - socialize - Volunteering - sky

- You learn many important life skills when you volunteer. You learn how to 1) ..... and talk to people you wouldn't usually meet.
- 2) ..... also gives you confidence. It's amazing to see how
- 3) ..... grow in confidence when they start volunteering.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

My grandfather is my hero. He was born in a village to a poor family in January 1952. But he worked hard at school and he went to the university. He was always interested in helping people and he became a doctor. I admire him because he has stopped working as a doctor, but he hasn't stopped helping people. He teaches in the village school.



He has taught many children who are now at the university. When he was a doctor, he helped poor patients for free. Furthermore he gave them medicine without any money. He is really a great man.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined pronoun "he" refers to .....  
 a) uncle                      b) brother                      c) grandfather                      d) father
2. The writer's grandfather worked as a .....  
 a) doctor                      b) pilot                      c) mechanic                      d) farmer

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Give a suitable title for the passage. ....
4. What is the main idea of the passage? ....
5. When was the writer's grandfather born? ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

1. by bus - her cousins - see - to - Farah - traveled - .  
 .....
2. imagined - a - flying - Amal - plane - in - .  
 .....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. Ghada and I .....(play) computer games when Dad arrived home.
2. You .....(mustn't) respect nature.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. we're going on a tour
2. do you want to play a game

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Iron in Ancient Egypt**

**Guiding elements:**

(meteorite - mined)



# Exam (11)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Hugo lives in .....  
a) England      b) Germany      c) France      d) Spain
- Hugo lives on the .....  
a) mountain      b) hill      c) desert      d) coast
- Hugo loves sailing his .....  
a) ship      b) boat      c) plane      d) car
- The bottle traveled over ..... kilometers.  
a) 60      b) 6      c) 6,000      d) 600

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- The Ancient Egyptians ..... cats. They loved them very much.  
a) hated      b) adored      c) disliked      d) lost
- My brother is really good at ..... and seek.  
a) go      b) dive      c) hide      d) swim
- Many birds ..... to find warmer weather in winter.  
a) migrate      b) swim      c) dive      d) sink

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

famous - snorkel - fly - tourists

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and 1 ..... to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is 2) ..... for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to 3) ..... and scuba dive here.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes. This was particularly important for farmers, who produced a lot of grain. The rats didn't eat the grain because the cats ate the rats!



## Exams

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. The Ancient Egyptians adored .....  
a) cats                      b) mice                      c) frogs                      d) insects
2. Cats kept the houses free of .....  
a) dogs                      b) pests                      c) birds                      d) lions

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Why were cats good pets? .....
4. Why didn't the rats eat the grain? .....
5. Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. flowers - and - can - We - plants - grow -  
.....
2. she - university - study - What - at - did - ?  
.....

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. .... (Do) you have a nice weekend last week?
2. If you learn to bake, you ..... (would) save a lot of money.

### 7 Punctuate the following.

1. you mustn't leave trash on beaches  
.....
2. what dose this proverb mean  
.....

### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**My favorite game**

Guiding elements:

(games - hopscotch)



# Exam (12)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. Tom's ..... lived by the sea.  
a) uncles      b) grandparents      c) aunts      d) cousins
2. The beach near their house was quiet and .....  
a) ugly      b) dirty      c) beautiful      d) terrible
3. They swam and ..... in the sea.  
a) surfed      b) served      c) drove      d) watched
4. They played games on the .....  
a) air      b) smoke      c) mountain      d) sand

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. "....." means seeds from plants used to make flour and bread.  
a) Sand      b) Oil      c) Grain      d) Salt
2. The ..... is London in 1965.  
a) character      b) setting      c) moral      d) narrator
3. A ..... person tries hard not to make mistakes.  
a) careless      b) careful      c) lazy      d) mad

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

**volunteered - support - garden - ocean**

We started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to 1) ..... other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a vegetable 2) ..... in the school to grow fresh fruit and vegetables. That was really popular. Other people 3) ..... to help clean trash from the river.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The sun is the most important source of energy. Although we can't live without it, scientists tell us that the sun has advantages and disadvantages. On the one hand, sunshine is good for you as it gives you energy. It is good for plants. Many crops and fruits grow well in Egypt as it is sunny most of the year and it is not usually cold.



## Exams

Tourists like to come to Egypt because of the sunshine. On the other hand, it has some disadvantages as the sunshine can burn your skin. The sun can start fires. If it is very hot, some plants can't grow and it can be difficult to play sports.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. Although sunshine is very useful, scientists say that it has also .... effects.  
a) good      b) nice      c) bad      d) great
2. One disadvantage of the sunshine is that it can ..... your skin.  
a) burn      b) benefit      c) kill      d) drive

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. Give a suitable title for the text. ....
4. What does the underlined pronoun "it" refer to? .....
5. What is the most important source of energy? .....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. to - would - like - know - What - you - ?  
.....
2. hurt - arm - I - over - and - fell - my - .  
.....

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. Ghada prefers ..... (play) board games to skipping.
2. If we ..... (went) to El Agami beach this summer, I'll swim every day.

### 7 Punctuate the following.

1. where did you go yesterday
2. he was playing in the forest

### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

**A visit to the museum**

Guiding elements:

(artifacts - statues)



# Exam (13)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Next ....., Nadia is going on a tour.  
a) day                      b) week                      c) month                      d) night
- They are going to see birds and animals which live near the .....  
a) trees                      b) desert                      c) sky                      d) water
- They are traveling along the river in small .....  
a) cars                      b) boats                      c) planes                      d) trains
- They will bring their .....  
a) clothes                      b) umbrellas                      c) hats                      d) cameras

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- A ..... is the long nose of an elephant.  
a) button                      b) sail                      c) trunk                      d) stall
- Eco-tourism is more ..... than traditional tourism.  
a) dangerous                      b) terrible                      c) sustainable                      d) horrible
- "....." means to spend time with people in a friendly way.  
a) Reply                      b) Socialize                      c) Fundraiser                      d) Volunteer

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

help - hurt - sick - polite

There are a lot of ways you can volunteer to help your community. Be 1) ..... and kind to your neighbors. Help people who are old or 2) ..... Call your neighbors to ask how you can 3) ..... You can offer to do their shopping or do jobs for them at home.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Egypt is an amazing country. There are many historical places to visit, as well as stores, markets, and museums. People can go snorkeling in the Red Sea, go on a desert safari, climb mountains, or sail on the Nile. So, tourism is important - but eco-tourism is becoming very popular, too. Eco-tourism is a way of traveling that doesn't damage the environment. It's more sustainable than traditional tourism, and it is designed to protect nature. People stay in simple accommodation, not large hotels, and they mustn't travel in ways that cause lots of pollution.



## Exams

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

1. People can go ..... in the Red Sea.  
a) camping    b) shopping    c) snorkeling    d) driving
2. The underlined word "popular" means .....  
a) unknown    b) dangerous    c) famous    d) ugly

### B) Answer the following questions.

3. What is the main idea of the text? .....
4. Why is eco-tourism designed? .....
5. What can you visit in Egypt? .....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

1. want - game - a - play - Do - you - to - ?  
.....
2. at - doing - We - a wildlife - school - project - are -  
.....

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

1. He ..... (watch) TV when I called him.
2. We enjoy ..... (make) up stories for our action figures.

### 7 Punctuate the following.

1. ali didn't play with me  
.....
2. what did cats do to help farmers  
.....

### 8 Write an email of FIFTY (50) words about:

Your favorite hobby to your friend Fareeda. Your name is Dalia and your email address is Dalia@gmail.com. Your friend's email address is Fareeda@yahoo.com.

#### Guiding elements:

( reading - library )



# Exam (14)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My favorite toy was my .....  
a) cuddly toy    b) doll's house    c) train set    d) skateboard
2. I loved going to the ..... and playing with my friends.  
a) zoo    b) park    c) river    d) sea
3. We all wanted to go so .....  
a) fast    b) slow    c) bad    d) worse
4. My skateboard was .....  
a) green    b) yellow    c) black    d) blue

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. A ..... is an object made of stone to look like a person or animal.  
a) statue    b) box    c) baboon    d) triangle
2. The main ..... was a bit boring. I didn't like him.  
a) moral    b) setting    c) character    d) ending
3. We ..... to help in the Community Service project every year.  
a) scare    b) frighten    c) damage    d) volunteer

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

afterlife - mummified - ibis - cow

The Ancient Egyptians loved birds. They loved falcons and the 1) ....., which represented wisdom. There are thousands of 2) ..... ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets were important for the Ancient Egyptians' everyday life - they were also important in the 3) .....

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people are starting to visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate - they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe.



## Exams

There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt, and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined pronoun "It" refers to .....  
a) Egypt      b) North Africa      c) Siwa Oasis      d) birds
2. The text is about .....  
a) Europe      b) Africa      c) bird migration      d) weather

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. Why do birds migrate to Egypt? .....
4. Why must birds often fly very long distances over Egypt? .....
5. How many species of birds are there in Egypt? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

1. wanted - in - help - to - ! - school - my - children - .  
.....
2. Where - silver - find - did - they - the - ?  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. I think hopscotch is ..... (at all) good.
2. If you go to bed late, you ..... (would) not get up early.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. egypt is in North africa.
2. did you have a good weekend

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Cats in Ancient Egypt**

**Guiding elements:**

(adored - pests)



# Exam (15)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- The two brothers were very .....  
a) alike      b) different      c) similar      d) the same
- The older brother was the ..... man in the village.  
a) biggest      b) smallest      c) richest      d) poorest
- The older brother always wanted ..... money.  
a) less      b) few      c) little      d) more
- The younger brother wasn't .....  
a) rich      b) poor      c) happy      d) young

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- We ..... money to charities.  
a) borrow      b) donate      c) damage      d) kill
- "....." means using knowledge to make good decisions.  
a) Wisdom      b) Statue      c) Hopscotch      d) Happiness
- When people ..... the environment, they want to protect it.  
a) migrate      b) close      c) respect      d) damage

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stories - out - reading - diving

My name is Reem. I love reading. I decided to help 1) .....  
in the kindergarten class on a Thursday by 2) ..... to the children.  
I love reading 3) ..... with the younger children, and they like it too.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly-colored fish, and maybe sharks. There is lots of other wildlife, too, and it is a great place for bird-watching.



The National Park is protected, but people are allowed to visit. Because it is so beautiful, lots of visitors come and ride boats, or swim and snorkel in the sea.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- The Sinai Peninsula is famous for its ..... life.  
a) river      b) ocean      c) sky      d) sea
- You can see coral ..... and lots of colored fish.  
a) roofs      b) reefs      c) rooms      d) tops

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What do people do in Ras Mohammed Park? .....
- What is the main idea of the text? .....
- What does the underlined adverb "her" refer to? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

- migrate - weather - find - to - Birds - warmer -  
.....
- find - the - they - message - How - did - ?  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- Were you looking at your phone when I ..... (see) you?
- They finished ..... (paint) the posters and tidied up.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

- where did you go on holiday
- my grandfather is a hero

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Eco-tourism**

**Guiding elements:**

(popular - protect)



# Exam (16)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- Ramses II was a great Egyptian .....  
a) Queen      b) King      c) Teacher      d) Doctor
- His father was the ..... of Egypt.  
a) Pharaoh      b) Engineer      c) Pilot      d) Sailor
- Young Ramses helped his father ..... the country.  
a) fix      b) damage      c) paint      d) rule
- Ramses became the leader of the Egyptian .....  
a) ships      b) boats      c) armies      d) skies

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- You can go quite fast on .....  
a) hopscotch      b) rollerblades      c) cuddly toy      d) a goat
- The ..... is the last part of a story.  
a) setting      b) beginning      c) ending      d) narrator
- When two things are ....., they might look the same or do the same things.  
a) real      b) different      c) various      d) similar

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

fresh - hate - vegetable - support

At school, we started a project called Community Help. We all had to choose something we could do to 1) ..... other people or things in our community. There were lots of ideas. For example, some people wanted to start a 2) ..... garden in the school to grow 3) ..... fruit and vegetables.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many birds migrate to and from Egypt, and across it, because of its place in the world. North Africa is hotter than Europe, so in winter, many birds leave northern European countries and fly to Egypt and other warmer places. This means that lots of interesting birds migrate to Egypt, such as eagles, falcons, and swifts. Many water birds migrate to Egypt, too.



You can often see large flocks of birds such as pelicans near water, along the Red Sea and Mediterranean coasts, as well as on the Nile. These birds often eat fish or plants that live in rivers, lakes, oases, and seas. Lake Qarun in Fayoum is a good place to see flamingos.

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- North Africa is ..... than Europe.  
a) colder      b) freezer      c) hotter      d) calmer
- Eagles, ....., and swifts are interesting birds.  
a) falcons      b) cows      c) horses      d) elephants

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- What birds can you see in Lake Qarun? .....
- Why do many birds migrate to and from Egypt? .....
- What's the general idea of the text? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

- The - shelves - books - on - the - are - .  
.....
- snorkeling - can - People - Red - the - go - Sea - in - .  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- You ..... (must) walk in the desert when it's hot.
- My sister stopped ..... (let) me share her doll's house.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

- who did they play with
- they weren't sleeping at 7 pm yesterday

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Protecting animals**

**Guiding elements:**

(habitats - preserve)



# Exam (17)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. The Ras Mohammed National ..... is on the Red Sea.  
a) River      b) Park      c) Lake      d) Ocean
2. It is a ..... area for locals and tourists to visit.  
a) fantastic      b) bad      c) sad      d) terrible
3. The Sinai ..... is famous for its sea life and warm water.  
a) River      b) Peninsula      c) Lake      d) Sea
4. People come from all over the world to ..... and scuba dive.  
a) sleep      b) fly      c) snorkel      d) drive

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. I like making up stories for my ..... figures.  
a) stall      b) action      c) hide      d) seek
2. A ..... person tries hard not to make mistakes.  
a) careless      b) lazy      c) careful      d) ugly
3. We should ..... nature.  
a) respect      b) damage      c) destroy      d) kill

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

stores - after - shopping - younger

My neighbor has always been kind to us. She used to help my mom look 1) ..... me when I was younger. Now she's getting a bit older, and it's sometimes difficult for her to go 2) ..... So I ask her what she needs, then I go to the 3) ..... and get it. I like to help her.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Last summer, my cousin Sami came to Cairo for the first time. He's 28 and he lives in London. He's an architect and he was visiting Cairo for his job. We went to the shopping centre and the sports centre. On Saturday, we went to Khan al-Khalili, a big market in the centre of Cairo. Hundreds of people come to the market from all over the city. We went early in the morning because it's quieter then. A lot of tourists visit in the afternoon, so it is busier.



## Exams

**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

1. The underlined word "summer" is a .....  
a) sport      b) food      c) subject      d) season
2. In the ..... a lot of tourists visit Khan al-Khalili.  
a) Saturday      b) night      c) afternoon      d) morning

**B) Answer the following questions.**

3. What's the main idea of the text? .....
4. Why did they go to Khan al-Khalili early in the morning? .....
5. How old is uncle Samy? .....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

1. playing - park - were - in - We - the - .  
.....
2. Red - go - in - Sea - We - snorkeling - the - .  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

1. Dalia was late, so she ran to school very ..... (quick).
2. I ..... (watch) a film when you called me.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

1. what are your favorite things  
.....
2. ahmed likes speaking English  
.....

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Your favorite games**

**Guiding elements:**

(video games - creative)



# Exam (18)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. My favorite artifact was a small .....  
a) snake      b) monkey      c) eagle      d) falcon
2. My brother liked a gold falcon with ..... glass eyes.  
a) green      b) blue      c) red      d) yellow
3. There were lots of cats made of brightly-colored .....  
a) metal      b) glass      c) stone      d) sand
4. The Ancient Egyptians adored .....  
a) donkeys      b) horses      c) cows      d) cats

## 2 Use the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

1. To ..... means to cover in oils and cloth to preserve for a very long time.  
a) adore      b) mummify      c) succeed      d) keep
2. You can go quite fast on .....  
a) stall      b) cuddly      c) action      d) rollerblades
3. My granddad is a good ..... He tells us fine stories.  
a) narrator      b) doctor      c) cook      d) player

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

Modern - protect - copper - three

The scarab amulet is from Ancient Egypt and it is more than

1) ..... thousand years old. It is made of 2) ..... People wore jewelry with the image of a scarab to 3) ..... them and bring them good fortune.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Atemu loved birds. Every day, birds came into his yard, and Atemu gave them grain. His sister's cat watched the birds, too, but it never caught them. One day, Atemu heard a strange noise in the sky. A lot of birds were flying into a field near his home. Atemu went to the field and threw grain to the birds. The birds ate the grain and then flew away. But one bird was different. It stayed on the ground.



**A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.**

- Atemu gave the birds .....  
a) grain      b) fields      c) fruit      d) vegetables
- The underlined word "near" is the same meaning as .....  
a) far      b) away      c) close      d) outside

**B) Answer the following questions.**

- Where did the different bird stay? .....
- What animal did Atemu's sister have? .....
- Summarize the text in one sentence. ....

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.**

- character - a bit - was - boring - The main -  
.....
- hopscotch - really - good - My brother - at - is -  
.....

**6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.**

- I enjoy .....(look) at the market stall.
- He .....(quick) did his homework.

**7 Punctuate the following.**

- do you like eco-tourism  
.....
- We mustn t drop litter in the street  
.....

**8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:**

**Your favorite toy**

**Guiding elements:**

(skateboard - park)



# Exam (19)

نص الاستماع في نهاية الكتاب.

## 1 Listen and choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- I love going on .....  
a) holiday      b) vacation      c) schools      d) market
- We learned about eco-tourism in ..... today.  
a) science      b) history      c) geography      d) English
- You ..... throw litter on beaches.  
a) must      b) mustn't      c) can      d) should
- I love watching ..... and other animals.  
a) matches      b) beaches      c) insects      d) birds

## 2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- My sister is really good at hide and .....  
a) steak      b) soak      c) seek      d) stall
- Some of the Ancient Egyptians' early iron was from .....  
a) meteorites      b) daggers      c) artifacts      d) tombs
- Did you ..... on the new rollerblades?  
a) throw      b) have a go      c) beat      d) make up

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box.

plant - planet - safe - babies

I think we should all try to protect animal habitats. Animals need 1) ..... places to live, find food, and look after their 2) ..... They are part of our 3) ....., so we must make sure that the things we do don't hurt them.

## 4 Read the text and answer the questions.

Many people visit Egypt for wildlife and bird-watching. There are lots of interesting birds to see here. Many kinds of birds migrate - they must fly to different countries at certain times of year, to find food, make nests, or have warmer weather. The birds often must fly very long distances, and lots of their journeys go over Egypt, because it is in North Africa and close to Asia and Europe. There are over 450 species of birds in Egypt,



## Exams

and people come from all over the world on vacations to see them. For example, Siwa Oasis is a fantastic place to see many migrating water birds. It is an important habitat and people must protect it.

### A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d.

- Many birds fly to different countries for ..... weather.  
a) warmer      b) hotter      c) colder      d) rainy
- The word "protect" means not to ..... the habitat.  
a) stop      b) keep      c) preserve      d) hurt

### B) Answer the following questions.

- Why do many people visit Egypt? .....
- How many species of birds are there in Egypt? .....
- What's the main idea of the text? .....

### 5 Put the words in the correct order to make correct sentences.

- am - kind - to - children - I - always - younger -  
.....
- you - back - give - What - can - community - to your - ?  
.....

### 6 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets.

- We wear gloves ..... (protect) our hands.
- Yesterday afternoon, Ali ..... (walk) his dog.

### 7 Punctuate the following.

- the cat is in the box
- what did she do last weekend

### 8 Write a text of FIFTY (50) words about:

A trip to the Red Sea

#### Guiding elements:

(fantastic - tourists - snorkel!)



## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

are - What - interesting - artifacts - bus

- Mom : We are going to the museum tomorrow.  
 Sarah: Great! 1) ..... can we see there?  
 Mom : There are a lot of 2) .....  
 Sarah: That's 3) ..... ! How 4) ..... we going there?  
 Mom : We're going by 5) .....

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |              |        |          |          |         |
|--------------|--------|----------|----------|---------|
| 1. glass     | book   | gold     | silver   | (.....) |
| 2. love      | needed | played   | liked    | (.....) |
| 3. on        | under  | why      | in       | (.....) |
| 4. character | ending | narrator | shopping | (.....) |
| 5. boat      | sun    | car      | bicycle  | (.....) |

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- The early ..... catches the worm.  
 a) cat                      b) bird                      c) fish                      d) lion
- My sister had some action .....  
 a) fingers                      b) pencils                      c) figures                      d) dolls
- Children can ..... to help their community.  
 a) play                      b) volunteer                      c) swim                      d) help
- There are some wooden toys on the toy .....  
 a) stall                      b) steel                      c) sail                      d) bank
- Many birds ..... in winter to find warmer weather.  
 a) travel                      b) swim                      c) migrate                      d) flock
- Omar ..... enjoys playing marbles.  
 a) really                      b) very                      c) so                      d) at all
- The cat is ..... the table.  
 a) in                      b) next                      c) front                      d) under
- I ..... a book when my dad came.  
 a) read                      b) was reading                      c) am reading                      d) reads



## Exams

9. If you ..... by train, you'll relax.  
a) travels                      b) traveled                      c) travel                      d) will travel
10. You must ..... nature.  
a) respect                      b) respected                      c) respects                      d) to respect

**4**

**Read the following passage, then answer the questions.**

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance. "Let's go and look at the house," said Ali. I was a bit scared and didn't want to go, but I followed him.

**A) Answer the following questions.**

1. What were you doing yesterday? .....
2. Where were you walking? .....
3. How did you feel when you saw the house? .....

**B) Choose the correct answer.**

4. The weather was ..... in the afternoon.  
a) cold                      b) rainy                      c) lovely                      d) windy
5. The word "little" means .....  
a) big                      b) small                      c) fat                      d) long

**5**

**Reorder the following words to make correct sentences.**

1. was - like - What - weather - the - ? .....
2. favorite - game - hopscotch - My - is - . .....
3. This - pear - delicious - looks - . .....
4. stopped - with - I - my - playing - train set - .....
5. made - The picture - papyrus - is - of - . .....

**6**

**Write a paragraph of (5) sentences on:**

Your visit to the museum

**Guiding words:**

(Last week - family - guide - artifacts - fascinating)



# Exam (21)

خاص بطلاب الأزهر الشريف

## 1 Read and complete the dialog with words from the box.

part - is - play - When - controller

- Huda: Hi, Mona. Is this your new games console?  
 Mona: Yes, it 1) .....  
 Huda: 2) ..... did you get it?  
 Mona: I got it last week.  
 Huda: What is this 3) ..... for?  
 Mona: That's the 4) ..... I use it to 5) ..... the game.

## 2 Read and circle the odd one out and replace it.

- |                 |           |           |            |         |
|-----------------|-----------|-----------|------------|---------|
| 1. doll's house | train set | bus       | skateboard | (.....) |
| 2. baboon       | plane     | crocodile | falcon     | (.....) |
| 3. swim         | went      | bought    | saw        | (.....) |
| 4. on           | in        | under     | where      | (.....) |
| 5. First        | before    | Next      | After that | (.....) |

## 3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d.

- The ..... is the person who tells the story.  
 a) teacher      b) narrator      c) setting      d) ending
- A ..... person tries hard not to make mistakes.  
 a) lazy      b) kind      c) careful      d) careless
- I'd love to have a ..... on my skateboard.  
 a) take      b) go      c) play      d) watch
- Gold is a .....  
 a) subject      b) color      c) metal      d) story
- You can volunteer on a local ..... to help.  
 a) sea      b) river      c) charity      d) cinema
- Gameela ..... picked up the cat.  
 a) gently      b) gentle      c) quick      d) good
- You ..... leave trash on beaches.  
 a) must      b) should      c) can      d) mustn't
- If you get up early, you ..... the bus.  
 a) catches      b) will catch      c) catch      d) caught



## Exams

9. They ..... football yesterday morning.  
a) play                      b) played                      c) were playing                      d) are playing
10. I enjoyed ..... adventure books.  
a) read                      b) reading                      c) to read                      d) reads

### 4 Read the following passage, then answer the questions.

My little sister was sick last month, and she was in the hospital. She's better now, but when we visited her, she was sad because she didn't like being there. I thought it would be nice to do something for children who are sick. My friends and I painted lots of big pictures of flowers, animals, beaches, and trees. Our parents donated lots of toys too. We took these and the paintings to the hospital to make the rooms look nicer.

#### A) Answer the following questions.

1. Where was your little sister last month? .....
2. Why was she sad? .....
3. Who donated lots of toys? .....

#### B) Choose the correct answer.

4. We painted a lot of .....  
a) photos                      b) pictures                      c) books                      d) toys
5. We wanted to make the ..... look nicer.  
a) rooms                      b) classes                      c) pictures                      d) parks

### 5 Reorder the following words to make correct sentences.

1. board games - like - really - playing - I - .....
2. were - good - What - you - at - ? .....
3. My - lived - sea - by - grandparents - the - .....
4. build - nests - Singing - don't - birds - .....
5. wear - hands - gloves - to protect - We - our - .....

### 6 Write a paragraph of (5) sentences on:

Your favorite toy

#### Guiding words:

(doll's house - stories - share - sister - play)



# Listening Texts

## Unit (7)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Ancient Egyptians loved birds too, especially falcons and the ibis, which represented wisdom. There are thousands of mummified ibises in Saqqara alone. These pets were also important in the afterlife. It is therefore common to find mummified pets and statues of animals in the tombs.

### - Listen and circle the correct answer.

One of the most beautiful artifacts from Ancient Egypt is Tutankhamun's mask, which was found in his tomb. The mask is gold, with blue lines between gold lines. Under his chin is a thin beard. There is also a snake on the top of his head.

## Unit (8)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had a skateboard, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard had black, with orange and yellow stickers on it. I had to wear a helmet and pads. It really hurts if you fall off the skateboard!

### - Listen and circle the correct answer.

Last week, I visited my grandpa. I found a box of my old toys. I loved my rollerblades. I could go really fast on them. I found my sister's doll's house. We both played with it. I enjoyed playing with my skateboard, too.

## Unit (9)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My friend Ali and I were playing in the forest yesterday. It was a lovely afternoon and the sun was shining. We were near my home, and we were hoping to see some interesting animals and birds. We were walking along the path when suddenly we saw a little house in the distance.

### - Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he

loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed and played games on the sand. One day, they were swimming in the sea when Tom saw a glass bottle in the water.

## Unit (10)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here. You can see coral reefs and lots of brightly-colored fish and maybe sharks.

### - Listen and circle the correct answer.

Next week Fares is going on a tour to see some beautiful birds. He will visit quiet beaches on a small bus, to see how many different kinds of birds. The sea in this area is a very popular place for birds to find food, so it will be a busy day.

## Unit (11)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Ramses II was a great Egyptian King. When he was about 5 years old, his father Sethi became the Pharaoh of Egypt. Then, when he was around 14, Ramses' older brother died. This meant Ramses would now be the next Pharaoh.

### - Listen and circle the correct answer.

I volunteer at a day center for old people. Some old people can't open glass bottles and jars. Their hands aren't strong enough. So they use a multi-grip to take off the tops. This is how you use it. Hold the jar with one hand and put this on the top. Hold this part with your other hand, and then turn it around. It's really easy to use. I love showing this to the people at the day center.

## Exam (1)

### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Adel is in an preparatory school. Adel's mother is a doctor. She helps sick people. Adel's father is a teacher. Adel's mother works in a big hospital.



## Listening Texts

### Exam (2)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I'm writing a review of one of Goha's stories. The story is about a man who goes to the market with his son. The setting is the countryside. The journey is long.

### Exam (3)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Teenagers should volunteer if they can. You learn to talk to people you wouldn't meet. Volunteering gives you happiness. It's good to give back to the place where you live.

### Exam (4)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Metal was the most interesting thing the Ancient Egyptians traded. The Ancient Egyptians could form metals into different shapes. They first found metal in rocks. Trade with other countries helped the Ancient Egyptian's economy to develop.

### Exam (5)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Ancient Egyptians loved birds, especially falcons and ibises. Ibises represented wisdom in Ancient Egypt. There are thousands of mummified ibises in Saqqara alone. All these pets were important in the afterlife in Ancient Egypt.

### Exam (6)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The weather was lovely and the sun was shining. They were swimming in the sea. Suddenly, they found a glass bottle in the water. They took the bottle to their grandparents to open it.

### Exam (7)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Next month, Heba is going on a tour with her friends. They are going to see birds and animals. They are travelling in small boats. They will bring their cameras.

### Exam (8)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

When Amina was little, she really liked games that

used a lot of imagination. She was very good at making up stories. She had a doll's house, some cuddly toys, and some action figures.

### Exam (9)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Proverbs have more than one meaning. The early bird catches the worm. This proverb tells us that a bird that is early, or the first to try to catch a worm, usually catches it. So, it also means that to be successful, you need to be the first to do something.

### Exam (10)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Ancient Egyptians loved animals and kept many as pets. They particularly adored cats, and there was a cat in almost every house. The Ancient Egyptians believed that cats looked after them and kept them safe. They were also good pets because they cleaned themselves and kept the houses free of pests like rats and snakes.

### Exam (11)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My name is Hugo and I live in Biarritz, France. I live on the coast and I love sailing my boat. Last week, I was sailing when I saw something in the water – your message in a bottle! This means it traveled over 6,000 kilometers.

### Exam (12)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Tom's grandparents lived by the sea. The beach near their house was quiet and beautiful, and he loved to go there with them. They swam, surfed, and played games on the sand.

### Exam (13)

1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Hi, I'm Nadia. Next month, we're going on a tour to see the birds and animals which live near the water. We'll travel along the river in small boats, and camp in tents at night. We'll bring our cameras, because we'll see some amazing things.



### Exam (14)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

When I was younger, my favorite toy was my skateboard. I loved going to the park and playing with my friends. They had skateboards, too, and it was really good fun. We all wanted to go so fast! My skateboard was black.

### Exam (15)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Once, there were two brothers who were very different. The older brother was the richest man in the village. He was rich, but he always wanted more money. The younger brother wasn't rich, but he was kind and shared what he had with his friends.

### Exam (16)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

Ramses II was a great Egyptian King. When he was very young, his father Sethi became the Pharaoh of Egypt. Later on, when he was around 10, young Ramses helped his father rule the country. By the time he was 20 years old, Ramses was a great soldier. In 1290 BCE, he became Pharaoh and leader of the Egyptian armies.

### Exam (17)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

The Ras Mohammed National Park on the Red Sea is a fantastic area for locals and tourists to visit. This beautiful area on the Sinai Peninsula is famous for its sea life, warm water, and amazing weather. People come from all over the world to snorkel and scuba dive here.

### Exam (18)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

My favorite artifact was a small snake made of metal. My brother liked a gold falcon with blue glass eyes. There were lots of cats made of brightly colored stone, too. The Ancient Egyptians adored cats. They believed that cats kept them safe.

### Exam (19)

#### 1) Listen and circle the correct answer.

I love going on vacation, but I think eco-tourism is a more sustainable way to travel. We learned about it in geography today and our teacher explained it really well. For example, you mustn't throw litter on beaches because this can make animals sick. I love watching birds and other animals